o

A

SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR

PREPARED BY

MORRIS H. MORGAN, Ph.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN
HARVARD UNIVERSITY

CHIEFLY FROM

LANE'S LATIN GRAMMAR

NEW YORK AND LONDON
HARPER & BROTHERS PUBLISHERS
1899

TABLE OF CONTENTS

THE REFERENCES ARE TO SECTIONS

v

Table of Contents

vi

Digitized by Google

Table of Contents

vii

Table of Contents

LATIN GRAMMAR

1. Latin Grammar has two parts. I. The first part treats of words: (A.) their sound; (B.) their formation; (C.) their inflection. II. The second part shows how words are joined together in sentences.

Part First—Words

PARTS OF SPEECH

2. The principal kinds of words or PARTS OF SPEECH are *Nouns, Verbs,* and *Conjunctions.*

3. NOUNS are *Substantive* or *Adjective.*

4. NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE, commonly called SUBSTANTIVES, are divided, as to meaning, into *Concrete* and *Abstract.*

5. CONCRETE SUBSTANTIVES denote persons or things. Concrete Substantives are subdivided into *Proper Names,* which denote individual persons or things: as, **Cicerō,** *Cicero;* **Rōma,** *Rome;* and *Common Names,* otherwise called *Appellatives,* which denote one or more of a class: as, **homo,** *man;* **taurus,** *bull.*

6. Appellatives which denote a collection of single things are called *Collectives:* as, **turba,** *crowd;* **exercitus,** *army.*

7. ABSTRACT SUBSTANTIVES denote qualities, states, conditions: as, **rubor,** *redness;* **aequitās,** *fairness;* **sōlitūdō,** *loneliness.*

8. NOUNS ADJECTIVE, commonly called ADJECTIVES, attached to substantives, describe persons or things: as, **ruber,** *red;* **aequus,** *fair;* **sōlus,** *alone.*

1

9. PRONOUNS are words of universal application which serve as substitutes for nouns.

Thus, **taurus,** *bull,* names, and **ruber,** *red,* describes, particular things; but **ego,** *I,* is universally applicable to any speaker, and **meus,** *mine,* to anything belonging to any speaker.

10. ADVERBS are mostly cases of nouns used to denote manner, place, time, or degree: as, **subitō,** *suddenly;* **forās,** *out of doors;* **diū,** *long;* **valdē,** *mightily, very.*

11. PREPOSITIONS are adverbs which are used to modify as prefixes the meaning of verbs, or to define more nicely the meaning of cases: as, **vocō,** *I call,* **ēvocō,** *I call out;* **ex urbe,** *from town.*

12. VERBS are words which denote action, including existence or condition: as, **regit,** *he guides;* **est,** *he is;* **latet,** *he is hid.*

13. CONJUNCTIONS connect sentences, nouns, or verbs: as, **et,** *and;* **sed,** *but.*

14. INTERJECTIONS are cries which express feeling, and are not usually a part of the sentence: as, **ā,** *ah;* **heu,** *alas.*

15. There is no ARTICLE in Latin : thus, **mēnsa** may denote *table, a table,* or *the table.*

A. Sound

ALPHABET

16. The sounds of the Latin language are denoted by twenty-one letters: A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X.

17. (19.) In Cicero's time two other letters were already in use in Greek words; these were always called by their Greek names, and were placed at the end of the alphabet; they are **Y** and **Z.**

18. (21.) The characters **I** and **V** represent not only the two vowels i and u, but also their cognate consonants, named consonant i and consonant u, and equivalent to the English *y* and *w* respectively.

2

19. (23.) In school-books and most texts of the authors, the vowel u is printed **U, u**, and the consonant **V, v**.

20. (25.) The alphabet represents a series of sounds, ranging from the fullest vowel sound **a**, to a mere explosion, as **c, t,** or **p**. These sounds are roughly divided into vowels and consonants.

VOWELS

21. (26.) The vowels, **a, e, i, o, u (y)**, are either *long* or *short*. The sound of a long vowel is considered to be twice the length of that of a short.

22. (31.) In school-books, a long vowel is indicated by a horizontal line over it: as, **āra,** *altar*. A short vowel is sometimes indicated by a curved mark: as, **pĕr,** *through;* but this mark is unnecessary if long vowels are systematically marked. A long vowel which is sometimes shortened in pronunciation is called *common*, and is marked ⌣: as, **mihῐ,** *to me*.

PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS

23. (33.) The long vowels are pronounced thus: **ā** as in *father;* **ē** as *é* in the French *été;* **ī** as in *machine;* **ō** nearly as in *tone;* **ū** as in *rule*.

24. (34.) The short vowels are pronounced thus: **a** as in the first syllable of *aha;* **e** nearly as in *step;* **i** as in *pit*, but with a little more of an *ee* sound; **o** as in *obey;* **u** as in *pull*.

25. (35.) The sound of **y** (short or long) is intermediate between **u** and **i**, like the French *u* and German *ü*.

26. (36.) The names of the English letters *a* and *o* are a pretty close approximation to the Latin sounds **e** and **o**. But the English *a* and *o* are both diphthongs, *a* having a vanishing sound of *ee* (not heard in the *é* of *été*), and *o* of *oo*, while the Latin **e** or **o** has one sustained sound.

CLASSIFICATION OF VOWELS

27. (37.) Vowels are divided into *open* and *close*. The most open vowel is **a**; less open are **o** and **e**. The close vowels are **u, y,** and **i**.

DIPHTHONGS

28. (39.) The combined sound of an open vowel and a closer one is called a *Diphthong*. All diphthongs are long.

29. (42.) The common diphthongs are pronounced thus: **au** like *ou* in *house;* **ae** like *ai* in *aisle;* **oe** like *oi* in *spoil.*

30. (43.) The uncommon diphthongs are pronounced thus: **ui,** like *oo-ee,* **eu** like *eh-oo,* both rapidly uttered ; **ei** as in *eight.*

CONSONANTS

PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS

31. (44.) Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. The following points must be noticed:

32. (45.) **b** before **s** or **t** has the sound of **p**: as, **abs,** pronounced *aps;* **obterō,** pronounced *opterō.* **c** is always like *k.* **g** as in *garden, gate, give;* never as in *gentle.* Consonant **i** has the sound of the English consonant *y.*

33. (46.) **m** at the end of a word is hardly sounded, and in verse when it comes before a vowel usually disappears with the preceding vowel. **n** before **c, g, q,** or **x,** called "*n adulterīnum*" or "spurious n," has a guttural sound: thus, **nc** as in *uncle;* **ng** as in *angle,* **ngu** as in *sanguine;* **nqu** as *nkw* in *inkwiper;* **nx** as in *lynx.* **qu** is like the English *qu.*

34. (47.) **s** as in *sin,* not with the sound of *z,* as in *ease.* Care should also be taken not to sound final **s** as *z.* **su,** when it makes one syllable with the following vowel, is like *sw* in *sweet.* **t** sounds always as in *time,* never as in *nation.* **v** is like the English *w.* **x** is a double consonant, standing for **cs,** and so sounded ; never as *gs* or *gz.*

35. (48.) When consonants are doubled, each consonant is distinctly sounded: thus, **terra,** *earth,* sounded ter-ra, not "*ter-a*"; **an-nus,** *year,* not "*an-us.*" But **ll** does not differ very materially from **l.**

4

36. (49.) ch is thought to have been pronounced like *kh* in *blockhead*, ph as in *uphill*, and th as in *hothouse*. But in practice **ch** is usually sounded as in the German *machen* or *ich*, ph as in *graphic*, and th as in *pathos*.

CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANTS

37. (50.) Consonants may be classed in three ways, thus:

38. (51.) In respect of continuity of sound : consonants which admit prolongation are called *Continuous sounds :* as, **l, m, s**; those which do not are called *Momentary sounds, Mutes,* or *Explosives :* as, **t, p.**

39. (52.) In respect of intonation : consonants which have voice are called *Sonants :* as, **m, b**; consonants which are mere puffs without voice are called *Surds :* as, **c, t, p.**

40. (53.) In respect of the organs of voice chiefly employed : consonants are divided into *Guttural,* or throat sounds, as, **g, c**; *Lingual,* or tongue sounds, as, **l, d**; and *Labial,* or lip sounds, as, **m, b.** Consonant i is *Palatal* and f *Labiodental.*

41. (54.) The threefold classification is shown in the following table :

Name from Vocal Organs	Continuous Sounds			Momentary, or Mutes	
	Sonant		Surd		
	Semivowel	*Nasal*	*Spirant*	*Sonant*	*Surd*
Guttural		n adul- terinum	h	g	c, q, k
Palatal	i				
Lingual	l, r	n	s	d	t
Labiodental			f		
Labial	v	m		b	p

5

SYLLABLES

42. (155.) A word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs. The last syllable but one is called the *Penult;* the last syllable but two is called the *Antepenult.*

LENGTH OF VOWELS

43. (157.) A vowel before another vowel or **h** is short: as,

eōs; ēvehō; fuit, fuimus, adnuit; compare dēlābor and deambulō; is, īmus, ītis, and eō, eunt; minūtus and minuō.

44. (165 f.) All vowels are long which are weakened from a diphthong, or which are the result of contraction: as,

caedō, concīdō; aestimō, exīstimō; *tībiicen, tībīcen: *aliīus, alīus.

45. (167.) A vowel is long before **nf, ns,** or consonant **i**; often before **gn**: as,

īnfāns; Māia; āiō, āiunt, āiēbam; ēius; Sēius; Pompēius; plēbēius (but not in compounds of **iugum**: as, biiugus); benīgnus.

LENGTH OF SYLLABLES

46. (168.) A syllable is long if its vowel is long, or if its vowel is followed by two consonants or by **x** or **z**: as,

dūcēbās; volvunt. In dūcēbās both the vowels and the syllables are long; in **volvunt** the vowels are short, but the syllables are long; in cases like the last the syllables (not the vowels) are said to be *long by position.* **h** does not count as a consonant, and **qu** has the value of a single consonant only: thus, in **adhūc** and **aqua** the first syllable is short.

47. (169.) But a syllable with a short vowel before a mute or **f** followed by **l** or **r** is not long: as, **tenebrae.** In verse, however, such syllables are sometimes regarded as long.

ACCENT

48. (170.) Words of two syllables have the accent on the penult: as,

ho′mo; ā′cer.

49. (171.) Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when that syllable is long; otherwise on the antepenult: as,

palūs′ter, onus′tus (46); muli′ebris, gen′etrīx (47); ar′borēs, ar′butus, gladi′olus.

50. (172.) A short penult retains the accent in the genitive and vocative with a single ī from stems in -io- (150, 152): as, genitive, cōnsi′lī; impe′rī; genitive or vocative, Vergi′lī; Mercu′rī. For calefácis, etc., see 111.

51. (179.) Enclitics are words which have no accent of their own, but are pronounced as a part of the word preceding. The word before the enclitic has the accent on the last syllable.

The commonest enclitics are -que, -ne, (-n), -ve, -ce, (-c): as, Latiúm-que; Latióque; armáque; Hyrcānísve Arabísve; istíce or istíc, hīcíne.

B. Formation

52. (180.) Formation is the process by which stems are formed from roots or from other stems.

ROOTS

53. (183.) A Root is a monosyllable which gives the fundamental meaning to a word or group of words.

54. (184.) A root is not a real word; it is neither a noun, naming something, nor a verb, denoting action. Thus i u g-, *yoke*, does not mean *a yoke* nor *I yoke;* it merely *suggests* something about yoking.

7

The root becomes a real word only when an inflection ending is added, or, more commonly, both a formative suffix and an inflection ending: as, iug-u-m, *a yoke.*   Roots are conveniently indicated by the sign √: as, √t e g-, to be read, " root **t e g-**."

55. (187.) A root sometimes has two or more forms: as, f ī d-, f o e d-, fi d-, *trust;* r ĕ g-, r e g-, *guide.*

Thus, fī d- is found in fīd-us, *trusty,* fīd-ūcia, *confidence,* fīd-ere, *put trust in;* f o e d- in foed-us, *pledge of faith,* foed-erātus, *bound by a pledge of faith;* fi d- in fid-ēs, *faith,* fid-ēlis, *faithful,* fid-ēlitās, *faithfulness,* per-fid-us, *faithless,* per-fid-ia, *faithlessness.*

56. (189.) A root or a part of a root is sometimes doubled in forming a word; this is called *Reduplication:* as, mur-mur, *murmur;* ul-ul-āre, *yell.*

PRESENT STEMS AS ROOTS

57. (190.) Many nouns are formed from the present stems of verbs, which take the place of roots.   Stems thus used are mostly those of verbs in -āre and -īre.

Thus, from ōrā-, stem of ōrāre, *speak,* are formed ōrā-tor, *speaker,* and ōrā-tiō, *speech.*

STEMS

58. (195.) A Stem is that part of a word which contains its meaning, and is either a root alone or more commonly a root with an addition called a *Formative Suffix.*

Thus, in the word ducis, *leader's,* the stem, which is identical with the root d u c-, means *leader;* in ductōris, *leader's,* the stem is formed by the formative suffix -tōr-, denoting the agent, attached to the √ d u c-.

59. (196.) New stems are formed by adding a suffix to a stem. Thus, from ōrātōr-, *speaker,* is formed, by the addition of the suffix -io-, a new stem ōrātōr-io-, N. ōrātōrius, *speaker's.*

PRIMITIVES AND DENOMINATIVES

60. (198.) A stem or word formed directly from a root or a verb stem is called a *Primitive.* A stem or word formed from a noun stem is called a *Denominative.*

Primitives: from √rēg-, reg-, *guide:* rēx, stem rēg-, *king;* rēgnum, stem rēg-no-, *kingdom;* rēctus, stem rēc-to-, *guided;* regere, stem reg-e-, *guide.* From ōrā-, stem of ōrāre, *speak:* ōrātor, stem ōrā-tōr-, *speaker;* ōrātiō, stem ōrā-tiōn-, *speech.*

Denominatives: from noun stem rēg-, *king:* rēgīna, stem rēg-īnā-, *queen;* rēgius, stem rēg-io-, rēgālis, stem rēg-āli-, *royal.* From ōrātiōn-, *speech:* ōrātiūncula, stem ōrātiūn-culā-, *little speech.* From rēg-no-, *kingdom:* rēgnāre, stem rēgnā-, *to rule.*

(A.) FORMATION OF THE NOUN

WITHOUT A FORMATIVE SUFFIX

61. (199.) Some roots are used as noun stems: as, duc-, N. dux, *leader* (√d u c-, *lead*); rēg-, N. rēx, *king* (√r ē g-, *guide*); particularly at the end of a compound: as, tubi-cin-, N. tubicen, *trumpeter* (tubā-, √c a n-, *play*).

WITH A FORMATIVE SUFFIX

I. THE SUBSTANTIVE

(A.) PRIMITIVES

I. THE AGENT

62. (204 f.) The suffixes -tōr-, feminine -trī-x, are used to denote the *Agent:* as,

ōrā-tōr-, N. ōrā-tor, *spokesman, speaker* (ōrā-re); vēnā-trīx, *huntress* (vēnā-ri). Workmen and tradesmen: arā-tor, *ploughman,* pās-tor, *shepherd,* pīc-tor, *painter,* sū-tor, *shoemaker.* Government officials: cēnsor, *appraiser, censor;* imperā-tor, *commander,* prae-tor (*leader*), *praetor,* dictā-tor, līc-tor. Of the law: accūsā-tor, *accuser,* spōn-sor, *bondsman,* tū-tor, *guardian.*

II. THE ACTION

63. (212.) The suffixes -io-, -min-, -i-ōn-, -ti-ōn-, -tu-, -ōr-, are used to denote the *Action:* as,

9

STEM	NOMINATIVE	FROM
od-io-	odium, *hate*	√od-, *hate*
crī-min-	crīmen, *charge*	√cer-, crī-, *sift*
leg-iōn-	legiō, *pick, legion*	√leg-, *pick*
āc-tiōn-	āctiō, *action*	√ăg-, *do*
ques-tu-	questus, *complaint*	√ques-, *complain*
fur-ōr-	furor, *rage*	√fur-, *rave*

III. THE INSTRUMENT OR MEANS

64. (238.) The suffixes -men-to-, -tro-, -cro- or -culo-, -lo-, -bro- or -bulo-, are used to denote the *Instrument* or *Means:* as,

STEM	NOMINATIVE	FROM
ōrnā-mento-	ōrnāmentum, *embellishment*	ōrnā-re, *embellish*
arā-tro-	arātrum, *plough*	arā-re, *plough*
ful-cro-	fulcrum, *couch-leg*	√fulc-, *prop*
pō-culo-	pōculum, *drinking-cup*	√pō-, *drink*
vinc-ulo-	vinculum, *bond*	√vinc-, *bind*
crī-bro-	crībrum, *sieve*	√cer-, crī-, *sift*
pā-bulo-	pābulum, *fodder*	√pā-, *feed*

(B.) DENOMINATIVES

I. THE QUALITY

65. (246.) The suffixes -io-, mōn-io-, -iā-; -tāt-, -tū-din-, are used to denote the *Quality:* as,

STEM	NOMINATIVE	FROM
conlēg-io-	conlēgium, *colleagueship*	conlēgā-, N. conlēga, *colleague*
testi-mōnio-	testimōnium, *evidence*	testi-, N. testis, *witness*
audāc-iā-	audācia, *boldness*	audāci-, N. audāx, *bold*
cīvi-tāt-	cīvitās, *citizenship*	civi-, N. cīvis, *citizen*
māgni-tūdin-	māgnitūdō, *greatness*	māgno-, N. māgnus, *great*

II. THE PLACE

66. (266.) Neuters with the suffixes -tōrio-, -ārio-, -īli-, or -ēto-, are often used to denote the *Place:* as,

10

STEM	NOMINATIVE	FROM
audī-tōrio-	audī-tōrium, *lecture-room*	audītōr-, N. audītor, *hearer*
aer-ārio-	aerārium, *treasury*	aer-, N. aes, *money*
ov-īli-	ovīle, *sheepfold*	ovi-, N. ovis, *sheep*
murt-ēto-	murtēta, *myrtle-groves*	murto-, N. murtus, *myrtle*

III. DIMINUTIVES

67. (267.) The suffixes -lo-, -lā, or -cu-lo-, -cu-lā-, are used to form substantives with a *Diminutive* meaning. Diminutives may denote:

68. (268.) Actual smallness: as, **secūricula**, *a little hatchet;* **ventulus**, *a bit of wind;* **spēcula**, *a ray of hope.*

69. (269.) Imputed smallness: implying, (*a.*) admiration, affection, or compassion; (*b.*) contempt or irony. This diminutive, which usually serves to add point to sentences themselves of a playful, patronizing, or slurring character, is very hard to translate; *little* and *small* are often inadequate; *old* or *poor* will sometimes do; but usually recourse must be had to free translations adapted to the particular context: as,

ōrātiūncula, *a gem of a speech, an attempt at a speech;* **mātercula**, *an anxious mother, poor mamma, dear mamma;* **lectulus**, *one's own little bed;* **ānellus aureolus**, *a gay gold ring;* **Graeculī**, *our Greek cousins, the good people in Greece;* **Graeculus**, *a regular Greek, your gentleman from Greece;* **muliercula**, *a pretty girl, a lady gay, one of the gentler sex, a mere woman, an unprotected female, a maiden all forlorn;* **lacrimula**, *a wee tear, a crocodile tear;* **volpēcula**, *Master Reynard, dan Russel;* **tōnstrīcula**, *a common barber girl;* **popellus**, *rabble;* **nummulī**, *filthy lucre;* **mercēdula**, *an apology for pay;* **ratiūncula**, *a first-rate reason;* **caupōnula**, *a low tavern.*

IV. PATRONYMICS

70. (279.) Patronymics, or proper names which denote descent from a father or ancestor, have stems in -dā- (N. -dē-s), F. -d- (N. -s). These are chiefly Greek names used in poetry.

Prīami-dā-, N. **Prīami-dē-s**, *scion of Priam's house;* **Tantali-d-**, N. **Tantali-s**, *daughter of Tantalus.*. **Pēlī-dē-s** (Pēleu-s); **Aenea-dē-s** (Aenēā-). F. sometimes -īnē or -ōnē; **Neptūnīnē** (Neptūno-); **Acrisiōnē** (Acrisio-).

11

II. THE ADJECTIVE

(A.) PRIMITIVES

71. (280.) Primitive adjectives may usually be divided into active and passive; but the same suffix often has either an active or a passive meaning.   Under primitive adjectives belong the participles; but these will be mentioned in connection with the verb.

I. WITH AN ACTIVE MEANING

72. (281.) The suffixes **-bun-do-, -cun-do, -ci-, -u-lo-,** and **-do-,** are used to form adjectives, generally of an *Active* meaning: as,

STEM	NOMINATIVE	FROM
trem-ebundo-	**tremebundus,** *quivering*	√ t r e m-, *quiver*
fā-cundo-	**fācundus,** *eloquent*	√ f ā-, *speak*
minā-ci-	**mināx,** *threatening*	**minā-rī,** *threaten*
pat-ulo-	**patulus,** *spreading*	√ p a t, *spread*
cal-ido-	**calidus,** *warm*	√ c a l-, *warm*

II. WITH A PASSIVE MEANING

73. (291.) The suffixes **-ili-** and **-bili-** are used to form adjectives, generally of a *Passive* meaning: as,

STEM	NOMINATIVE	FROM
fac-ili-	**facilis,** *easy to do*	√ f a c-, *do*
amā-bili-	**amābilis,** *lovable*	**amā-re,** *love*

(B.) DENOMINATIVES

74. (298.) Denominative adjectives may be divided into such as denote: I. *Material* or *Resemblance.* II. *Appurtenance:* implying sometimes *possession,* often *fitness, conformity, character,* or *origin.* III. *Supply.* IV. Diminutives. V. Comparatives and Superlatives; a few of these are primitive.

I. MATERIAL OR RESEMBLANCE

75. (299.) The suffixes **-eo-** and **-n-eo-** are used to form adjectives denoting *Material* or *Resemblance:* as,

12

STEM	NOMINATIVE	FROM
aur-eo-	aureus, *golden*	auro-, N. aurum, *gold*
ahē-neo-	ahēneus, *bronze*	*ahes-, N. aes, *bronze*

II. APPURTENANCE

76. (302.) The suffixes -io-, īvo-; -timo-, -li-, -no-; -bri-; -co-, -ēnsi-, are used to form adjectives denoting *Belonging to:* as,

STEM	NOMINATIVE	FROM
rēg-io-	rēgius, *kingly*	rēg-, N. rēx, *king*
aest-īvo-	aestīvus, *summer's*	aestāt-, N. aestās, *summer*
mari-timo-	maritimus, *of the sea*	mari-, N. mare, *sea*
humi-li-	humilis, *lowly*	humo-, N. humus, *ground*
rēg-āli-	rēgālis, *of a king*	rēg-, N. rēx, *king*
cīv-īli-	cīvīlis, *citizen's*	cīvi-, N. cīvis, *citizen*
can-īno-	canīnus, *of a dog*	can-, N. canis, *dog*
mulie-bri-	muliebris, *womanly*	mulier-, N. mulier, *woman*
cīvi-co-	cīvicus, *citizen's*	cīvi-, N. cīvis, *citizen*
circ-ēnsi-	circēnsis, *of the circus*	circo-, N. circus, *circus*

77. (305; 318 f.) Here belong many adjectives from proper names: as,

STEM	NOMINATIVE	FROM
Corinth-io-	Corinthius, *Corinthian*	Corintho-, N. Corinthus, *Corinth*
Rōm-āno-	Rōmānus, *Roman*	Rōmā-, N. Rōma, *Rome*
Cicerōn-iāno-	Cicerōniānus, *Cicero's*	Cicerōn-, N. Cicero, *Cicero*
Plaut-īno-	Plautīnus, *of Plautus*	Plauto-, N. Plautus, *Plautus*

III. SUPPLY

78. (331.) The suffixes -to-, -lento-, and -ōso- are used to form adjectives denoting *Supplied* or *Furnished with:* as,

STEM	NOMINATIVE	FROM
barbā-to-	barbātus, *bearded*	barbā-, N. barba, *beard*
vīno-lento-	vīnolentus, *drunken*	vīno-, N. vīnum, *wine*
ann-ōso-	annōsus, *full of years*	anno-, N. annus, *year*

IV. DIMINUTIVES

79. (339.) Diminutives are formed from adjectives, as from substantives (67): as,

13

-lo-, N. -lu-s : **parvo-lu-s**, or **parvu-lu-s**, *smallish* (parvo-) ; **vet-ulus**, *little old* (vet-) ; **bel-lu-s**, *bonny* (bono-) ; -culo-, N. -culu-s : **pauper-culo-**, N. **pauper-culu-s**, *poorish* (pauper-) ; **levi-culu-s**, *somewhat vain* (levi-).

V.   COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

80. (342.) Comparatives and superlatives are usually formed from the stem of the positive : as, **dignior**, *worthier*, **dignissimus**, *worthiest*, from **digno-**, stem of **dignus**. A few are formed directly from roots : thus, **maior**, *greater*, and **maximus**, *greatest*, are formed from the √ m a g-, and not from **magno-**, stem of **magnus**.

(1.)   COMPARATIVE -ior, SUPERLATIVE -issimus

81. (343.) The nominative of comparative adjectives ends usually in **-ior,** and that of superlatives in **-issimus :** thus,

COMPARATIVE			SUPERLATIVE		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
-ior	-ior	-ius	-issimus	-issima	-issimum

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, *high*	**altior**, *higher*	**altissimus**, *highest*
tristis, *sad*	**tristior**, *sadder*	**tristissimus**, *saddest*

(2.)   SUPERLATIVE -rimus

82. (344.) Adjectives with the nominative in **-er** have the nominative of the superlative like the nominative of the positive with **-rimus** added : as,

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pauper, *poor*	**pauperior**, *poorer*	**pauperrimus**, *poorest*
acer, *sharp*	**acrior**, *sharper*	**acerrimus**, *sharpest*

(3.)   SUPERLATIVE -limus

83. (345.)   **humilis, difficilis,** and **facilis, similis, dissimilis,** and **gracilis,**

have the nominative of the superlative in **-limus,** following l of the stem : as,

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
humilis, *lowly*	**humilior**, *lowlier*	**humillimus**, *lowliest*

PECULIARITIES OF COMPARISON

84. (353.) Some positives have a comparative or superlative, or both, from a different form of the stem: such are,

frūgī, *thrifty*	**frūgālior**	**frūgālissimus**
nēquam, *naughty*	**nēquior**	**nēquissimus**
iuvenis, *young*	**iūnior**	(**nātū minimus**)
senex, *old*	**senior**	(**nātū māximus**)
māgnus, *great*	**māior**	**māximus**
beneficus, *kindly*	**beneficentior**	**beneficentissimus**
honōrificus, *complimentary*	**honōrificentior**	**honōrificentissimus**
māgnificus, *grand*	**māgnificentior**	**māgnificentissimus**

85. (355.) Some positives have a comparative or superlative, or both, from a wholly different stem: such are,

bonus, *good*	**melior**	**optimus**
malus, *bad*	**pēior**	**pessimus** .
multus, *much*	**plūs** (sing. Ne. only)	**plūrimus**
parvus, *little*	**minor**	**minimus**

86. (356.) Four comparatives in **-erior** or **-terior**, denoting place, have two forms of the superlative; the nominative masculine singular of the positive is not in common use:

exterior	**extimus**, or **extrēmus**, *outermost*
īnferior	**īnfimus**, or **īmus**, *lowest.*
posterior	**postumus**, *lastborn*, or **postrēmus**, *last*
superior	**summus**, or **suprēmus**, *highest*

87. (357.) Six, denoting place, have the positive only as an adverb or preposition:

cis, *this side*	**citerior**	**citimus**, *hitherest*
dē, *down*	**dēterior**	**dēterrimus**, *lowest, worst*
in, *in*	**interior**	**intimus**, *inmost*
prae, *before*	**prior**	**prīmus**, *first*
prope, *near*	**propior**	**proximus**, *nearest*
(**ūls**), *beyond*	**ūlterior**	**ūltimus**, *furthest*

ōcior, *swifter*, **ōcissimus**, has no positive.

15

88. (358.) Some have a superlative, but no comparative: as, **falsus,** *false,* **inclutus,** *famed,* **meritus,** *deserving,* **novus,** *new ;* **vetus, veterrimus,** *old,* **sacer, sacerrimus,** *sacred.*

89. (360.) Many adjectives have no suffixes of comparison, and supply the place of these by **magis,** *more,* and **māximē,** *most :* as, **mīrus,** *strange,* **magis mīrus, māximē mīrus.** Many adjectives, from their meaning, do not admit of comparison.

<center>COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS</center>

90. (361.) Adverbs derived from adjectives have as their comparative the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective ; the superlative is formed like that of the adjective, but ends in **-ē:** as,

altē, *on high*	altius	altissimē
ācriter, *sharply*	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile, *easily*	facilius	facillimē

<center>(B.) FORMATION OF DENOMINATIVE VERBS</center>

91. (365.) Denominative verb stems have present infinitives in **-āre, -ēre,** or **-īre (-ārī, -ērī,** or **-īrī),** and are formed from noun stems of all endings: as,

Verb	From Noun	Verb	From Noun
fugā-re, *rout*	fugā-, N. fuga	flōrē-re, *blossom*	flōr-, N. flōs
locā-re, *place*	loco-, N. locus	sordē-re, *be dirty*	sordi-, N. sordēs
nōminā-re, *name*	nōmin-, N. nōmen	pūnī-re, *punish*	poenā-, N. poena
levā-re, *lighten*	levi-, N. levis	custōdī-re, *guard*	custōd-, N. custōs
miserē-rī, *pity*	misero-, N. miser	vestī-re, *dress*	vesti-, N. vestis

92. (368.) Verbs in -āre are by far the most numerous class of denominatives; they are usually transitive; but deponents often express condition, sometimes occupation: as, **dominārī,** *lord it, play the lord ;* **aquārī,** *get oneself water.* Most verbs in -īre also are transitive; those in -ēre usually denote a state: as, **calēre,** *be warm ;* but some are causative: as, **monēre,** *remind.*

<center>16</center>

93. (371.) Many verbs in **-tāre (-sāre)**, or **-tārī (-sārī)**, express frequent, intense, or sometimes attempted action. These are called *Frequentatives* or *Intensives;* they are formed from perfect participle stems : as,

cant-āre, *sing* (canto-) ; cēss-āre, *loiter* (cēsso-) ; amplex-ārī, *embrace* (amplexo-); habit-āre, *live* (habito-); pollicit-ārī, *make overtures* (pollicito-) ; dormīt-āre, *be sleepy* (dormīto-).

94. (372.) Some frequentatives in **-tāre** are formed from the present stem of a verb in **-ere**; the formative vowel before **-tāre** becomes **i** : as, agi-tāre, *shake* (age-re) ; quaeri-tāre, *keep seeking* (quaere-re).

95. (373.) A few frequentatives add **-tā-** to the perfect participle stem : as, ācti-tāre, *act often* (ācto-) ; facti-tāre, *do repeatedly* (facto-). From a frequentative another frequentative is sometimes derived : as, dict-āre, *dictate*, dicti-tāre, *keep asserting* (dicto-).

96. (375.) A few verbs in **-uriō, -urīre**, express desire; such are called *Desideratives:* as, **ēss-urīre** or **ēs-urīre**, *want to eat* (edere, ēsse). A few in **-ssō, -ssere**, express earnest action; such are called *Meditatives:* as, lace-ssō, lace-ssere, *provoke.*

COMPOSITION

97. (376.) In compounds, the fundamental word is usually the second, which has its meaning qualified by the first.

98. (378.) A Real Compound is a word whose stem is formed from two stems, or an inseparable prefix and a stem, fused into one stem; an Apparent Compound is formed by the juxtaposition of an inflected word with another inflected word, a preposition, or an adverb.

I. COMPOSITION OF NOUNS

(A.) REAL COMPOUNDS

FORM OF COMPOUNDS

99. (379.) If the first part is a noun, its stem is taken : as, **Ahēno-barbus,** *Redbeard, Barbarossa;* usually with change of the stem vowel : as, **Grāiu-gena,** *Greek-born* (Grāio-); or sometimes with disappearance of a vowel : as, **man-ceps,** *contractor* (manu-); particularly before a

B   17

vowel: as, **mǎgn-animus,** *great-souled* (**mǎgno-**). Consonant stems are often extended by i before a consonant: as, **mōri-gerus,** *complaisant* (**mōr-**).

100. (381.) The second part, which often has a change in the vowel, is sometimes a bare root used as a stem (61), oftener a root with a formative suffix; or a noun stem, sometimes with its stem ending modified: as, **iū-dic-,** N. **iūdex,** *juror* (√ d i c-, *declare*) ; **con-tǎg-iōn-,** N. **con-tǎgiō,** *touching together* (√ t ǎ g-, *touch,* 63) ; **im-berb-i-,** N. **imberbis,** *beardless* (**barbǎ-**).

MEANING OF COMPOUNDS

101. (382.) Determinatives are compounds in which the second part keeps its original meaning, though determined or modified by the first part.   The meaning of a determinative may often be best expressed by two words.

102. (383.) The first part of a determinative may be an adjective, an adverb, a preposition, or an inseparable prefix; the second part is a noun : as, **lǎti-fundium,** i.e. **lǎtī fundī,** *broad acres;* **alti-sonāns,** i.e. **altē sonāns,** *high-sounding;* **con-discipulus,** i.e. **cum alterō discipulus,** *fellow-pupil;* **in-dǐgnus,** i.e. **nōn dǐgnus,** *unworthy.*

103. (384.) The first part of a determinative may represent the oblique case of a noun, generally a substantive; the second part is a noun or verb stem.   These compounds are called *Objectives:* as, accusative of direct object, **armi-ger,** i.e. **quī arma gerit,** *armor-bearer;* genitive, **sōl-stitium,** i.e. **sōlis statiō,** *solstice;* ablative instrumental, **tubi-cen,** i.e. **quī tubā canit,** *trumpeter.*

104. (385.) Possessives are adjective compounds in which the meaning of the second part is changed.   The second part of a possessive is always formed from a substantive, qualified by the noun, adverb, or inseparable prefix of the first part, and the whole expresses an attribute which something *has:* as,

longi-manus, *long arms, long-armed;* **bi-linguis,** *two-tongued;* **mǎgn-animus,** *greatheart, great-hearted;* **im-berbis,** *beardless.*

(B.)   APPARENT COMPOUNDS

105. (386.) Apparent Compounds are formed :

106. (387.) By two nouns combined, one with an unchanging case

ending, the other with full inflections: as, **aquae-ductus,** *aqueduct ;* **senātūs-cōnsultum,** *decree of the senate ;* **pater-familiās,** *father of a family ;* **vērī-similis,** *like the truth ;* in these words, **aquae, senātūs, familiās,** and **vērī** are genitives, and remain genitives, while the other part of the compound is declinable.

107. (389.) By nouns, chiefly substantives, in the same case placed loosely side by side and making one idea. The two words may be used: (*a.*) Copulatively: as, **duo-decim,** *two and ten, twelve ;* or (*b.*) Appositively: one word explaining the other: as, **Iuppiter,** *Jove the Father,* for **Iovis pater.**

108. (390.) From an original combination of an oblique case with a preposition: as, **prōcōnsul,** *proconsul,* from **prō cōnsule,** *for a consul ;* **ēgregius,** *select,* from **ē grege,** *out of the herd.*

II. COMPOSITION OF VERBS

(A.) REAL COMPOUNDS

109. (391.) Real Compounds are direct compounds of a verb with a preposition: as,

per-agere, *put through, accomplish ;* **ab-igere,** *drive away ;* **ex-quīrere,** *seek out.*

(B.) APPARENT COMPOUNDS

110. (393.) Apparent Compounds are formed by the juxtaposition of:

111. (394.) A verb with a verb: **faciō** and **fīo** are added to present stems, mostly of intransitive verbs in **-ēre ;** the **-e-** of the first verb is sometimes long, and sometimes short: as, **calĕ-facere,** *make warm* (**calēre**); **madĕ-facere,** *make wet* (**madēre**). In these apparent compounds, the accent of **faciō** remains the same as in the simple verb: as, **calĕfácis.**

112. (395.) A substantive with a verb: as, **anim-advertere,** *pay heed to,* **animum advertere ; vēnum-dare,** or **vēndcre,** *sell,* **vēnum dare.**

113. (396.) An adverb with a verb: as, **satis-facere, satis-dare,** *give satisfaction ;* **intro-īre,** *go inside.*

C.   Inflection

114. (397.) Inflection is the change which nouns, pronouns, and verbs undergo to indicate their relation in a sentence.

The inflection of a noun or pronoun is often called *Declension*, and that of a verb, *Conjugation*.

GENDER

115. (402.) There are two genders, *Masculine* and *Feminine*. Masculine and feminine nouns are called *Gender nouns*. Nouns without gender are called *Neuter*.

116. (403 f.)   Gender is, properly speaking, the distinction of sex. In Latin, a great many things without life have gender in grammar, and are masculine or feminine.   Some classes of substantives may be brought under general heads of signification, as below, like the names of rivers and winds (117), which are masculine, or of plants (118), which are feminine.   When the gender cannot be determined thus, it must be learned from the special rules for the several stems and their nominatives.

GENDER OF SOME CLASSES OF SUBSTANTIVES
MASCULINES

117. (405.) Names of male beings, winds, and most names of rivers and mountains, are masculine: as,

Caesar, Gāius, Sūlla, men's names; pater, *father;* erus, *master;* scrība, *writer;* Tiberis, *the Tiber;* Aquilō, *a Norther;* Lūcrētilis, *Mt. Lucretilis.*

FEMININES

118. (407.) Names of female beings, and most names of plants, flowers, shrubs, and trees, are feminine: as,

20

Gāia, Glycerium, women's names; **mālus,** *apple-tree;* **quercus,** *oak;* **īlex,** *holm-oak;* **abiēs,** *fir.*

COMMON AND EPICENE NOUNS

119. (410.) Some nouns have one ending, but are applicable to either sex. Such are said to be of *Common Gender:* as, **adulēscēns,** *young man* or *young woman;* **dux,** *leader;* **īnfāns,** *baby, child.*

120. (411.) EPICENES have one ending and one grammatical gender, though applicable to animals of either sex. Thus, **aquila,** *eagle,* is feminine, though it may denote a *he-eagle* as well as a *she-eagle.*

NEUTERS

121. (412.) Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, words and expressions quoted or explained, and letters of the alphabet, are neuter: as,

fās, *the right;* **vīvere ipsum,** *mere living;* **istūc** "**taceō,**" *your "I won't mention";* **o Graecum,** *Greek O.*

NUMBER

122. (414.) There are two numbers, the *Singular,* used of one, the *Plural,* of more than one.

123. (415.) **ambō,** *both,* and **duo,** *two,* nominative and accusative masculine and neuter, are the only remnants of an old *Dual* number, denoting two.

124. (418.) Some substantives have different meanings in the two numbers: as, **aedis,** *temple,* **aedēs,** *house;* **auxilium,** *aid,* **auxilia,** *auxiliaries;* **Castrum,** *Castle,* **castra,** *camp;* **cōpia,** *abundance,* **cōpiae,** *troops;* **finis,** *end,* **fīnēs,** *boundaries;* **impedīmentum,** *hindrance,* **impedīmenta,** *baggage;* **littera,** *letter (of the alphabet),* **litterae,** *epistle.*

CASE

125. (419.) Nouns have five cases, the *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative,* and *Ablative.*

126. (420.) Town names and a few appellatives (5) have also a case denoting the place where, called the *Locative.* Masculine stems in -o-

and some Greek stems with other endings have still another form used
in addressing a person or thing, called the *Vocative*.

127. (419.) The nominative represents a noun as subject, the accusa-
tive as object; the genitive denotes the relation of *of*, the dative of *to*
or *for*, and the ablative of *from, with, in*, or *by*. But the meanings of the
cases are best learned from reading. All cases but the nominative and
vocative are called *Oblique Cases*.

(A.) INFLECTION OF THE NOUN

128. (398.) The noun or pronoun is inflected by
attaching case endings to the stem.

The endings, which for brevity are called case endings, indicate
number as well as case, and serve also to distinguish gender words from
neuters in the nominative and accusative singular of some stems, and
of all plurals. These endings are nearly the same for stems of all kinds.

THE STEM

129. (399.) The stem contains the meaning of the noun (58).
Noun stems are arranged in the following order: (1.) stems
in -ā-, in -o-, in a consonant, or in -i-; these are substantive,
including proper names, or adjective; (2.) stems in -u- or -ē-;
these are substantive only, and include no proper names.

130. (421.) The stem of a noun is best seen in the genitive;
in the genitive plural it is preserved without change, except
that o of -o- stems is lengthened. In dictionaries the stem end-
ing is indicated by the genitive singular: thus, -ae, -ī, -is, -ūs,
-ĕī, indicate respectively stems in -ā-, -o-, a consonant or -i-,
-u-, and -ē-, as follows:

GENITIVE SINGULAR	GENITIVE PLURAL	STEMS IN
ae, mēnsae, *table*	-ārum, mēnsā-rum	-ā-, mēnsā-, N. mēnsa
-ī, dominī, *master*	-ōrum, dominō-rum	-o-, domino-, N. dominus
-is, rēgis, *king*	-cons. um, rēg-um	-consonant, rĕg-, N. rēx
-is, cīvis, *citizen*	-ium, cīvi-um	-i-, cīvi-, N. cīvis
-ūs, portūs, *port*	-uum, portu-um	-u-, portu-, N. portus
-ĕī, rĕī, *thing*	-ērum, rē-rum	-ē, rē-, N. rēs

22

131. (423.) Neuters have the nominative and accusative alike; in the singular the stem is used: as, **nōmen**, *name*. In the plural **-a** is always used: as, **rēgna**, *kingdoms*, **nōmina**, **cornua**, *horns*.

132. (428.) The dative and ablative plural are always alike: as, **mēn-sīs**, **dominīs**, **nāvi-bus**, **portu-bus** or **porti-bus**, **rē-bus**.

STEMS IN -ā-

THE FIRST DECLENSION

Genitive singular -ae, genitive plural -ā-rum.

133. (432.) Stems in **-ā-** include substantives and adjectives; both substantives and adjectives are feminine.

134. (433.) Names of males are masculine (117): as, **scrība**, *writer;* also **Hadria**, *the Adriatic.*

135. (434.) The nominative of stems in **-ā-** ends in the shortened stem vowel **-a**.

136. (435.) Stems in **-ā-** are declined as follows:

Example Stem	**mēnsa,** *table,* **mēnsā-, F.**		Stem and case endings
Singular			
Nom.	mēnsa	*table, a* (or *the*) *table*	-a
Gen.	mēnsae	*a table's, of a table*	-ae
Dat.	mēnsae	*to* or *for a table*	-ae
Acc.	mēnsam	*a table*	-am
Abl.	mēnsā	*from, with,* or *by a table*	-ā
Plural			
Nom.	mēnsae	*tables* (or *the*) *tables*	-ae
Gen.	mēnsārum	*tables', of tables*	-ārum
Dat.	mēnsīs	*to* or *for tables*	-īs
Acc.	mēnsās	*tables*	-ās
Abl.	mēnsīs	*from, with,* or *by tables*	-īs

SINGULAR CASES

137. (437.) The genitive sometimes ends (1.) in **-āī** in poetry: as, **aulāī**, *of the hall;* **pictāī**, *embroidered;* (2.) in **-ās**: as, **molās**, *of a mill.*

This genitive is rare, but was always kept up in the word **familiās** with **pater** or **māter**, sometimes with **fīlius** or **fīlia** : **pater familiās,** *the good-man,* **māter familiās,** *the housewife.* But **pater familiae,** or in the plural **patrēs familiārum,** is equally common.

138. (438.) Town names and a few appellatives (5) have a locative case in **-ae** : as, **Rōmae,** *in Rome ;* **mīlitiae,** *in war, in the field, in the army.*

<center>PLURAL CASES</center>

139. (439.) Compounds ending with **-cola,** *inhabiting,* and **-gena,** *born,* and patronymics, sometimes have the genitive plural in **-um** in poetry : as, **caelicolum,** *of occupants of heaven ;* **Grāiugenum,** *of Greek-born men ;* **Aeneadum,** *of Aeneas's sons ;* also names of peoples : as, **Lapithum,** *of the Lapithae.* With these last **-um** occurs even in prose : as, **Crotōniātum,** *of the Crotona people.*

140. (442.) The dative and ablative plural sometimes end in **-ābus,** particularly in **deābus,** *goddesses,* and **fīliābus,** *daughters,* to distinguish them from **deīs,** *gods,* and **fīliīs,** *sons.* **ambae,** *both,* and **duae,** *two,* regularly have **ambābus** and **duābus.**

<center>GREEK NOUNS</center>

141. (445.) Greek proper names sometimes have the following forms : Nominative masculine **-ās, -ēs** : as, **Prūsiās, Atrīdēs** ; feminine **-ā** : as, **Gelā, Phaedrā** ; **-ē** : as, **Circē.** Genitive feminine **-ēs** : as, **Circēs.** Accusative masculine **-ān, -dēn** : as, **Aenēān, Pēlīdēn** ; feminine **-ēn** : as, **Circēn.** Ablative feminine **-ē** : as, **Tīsiphonē.** Vocative **-ā** or **-a** : as, **Atrīdā, Atrīda, Thyesta** ; **-tē** : as, **Boōtē** ; **-dē** : as, **Aeacidē.**

<center>STEMS IN -O-</center>
<center>THE SECOND DECLENSION</center>
<center>Genitive singular -ī, genitive plural -ō-rum</center>

142. (446.) Stems in **-o-** include substantives and adjectives, masculine or neuter.

143. (447.) Most names of plants in **-us** are feminine (118); also the following : **alvos** or **alvus,** *belly,* **colus,** *distaff,* **domus,** *house,* **humus,** *ground,* **vannus,** *fan.*

144. (448.) The nominative of masculines ends, including the stem vowel, in **-u-s** ; some end in **-r** ; neuters end in **-u-m.** For the older Latin **-o-s, -o-m,** see 148.

<center>24</center>

145. (449.) Stems in **-o-** with the nominative in **-us** or **-um** are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	dominus, *master*, domino-, M.	rēgnum, *kingdom*, rēgno-, Ne.	Stem and case endings	
			M.	Ne.
Singular				
Nom.	**dominus,** *a* (or *the*) *master*	**rēgnum**	-us	-um
Gen.	**dominī,** *a master's*	**rēgnī**	-ī	-ī
Dat.	**dominō,** *to* or *for a master*	**rēgnō**	-ō	-ō
Acc.	**dominum,** *a master*	**rēgnum**	-um	-um
Abl.	**dominō,** *from, with,* or *by a*	**rēgnō**	-ō	-ō
Voc.	**domine,** *master* [*master*		-e	
Plural				
Nom.	**dominī,** (*the*) *masters*	**rēgna**	-ī	-a
Gen.	**dominōrum,** *of masters*	**rēgnōrum**	-ōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	**dominīs,** *to* or *for masters*	**rēgnīs**	-īs	-īs
Acc.	**dominōs,** *masters* [*masters*	**rēgna**	-ōs	-a
Abl.	**dominīs** *from, with,* or *by*	**rēgnīs**	-īs	-īs

146. (450.) **deus,** *god,* is declined as follows: N. **deus,** G. **deī,** D. and Ab. **deō,** Ac. **deum.** Plural: N. **deī, diī,** commonly **dī,** G. **deōrum** or **deum,** D. and Ab. **deīs, diīs,** commonly **dīs,** Ac. **deōs.**

147. (451.) Stems in **-o-** with the nominative in **-r,** or in **-āius, -ēius,** or **-ōius** are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	puer, *boy,* puero-, M.	ager, *field,* agro-, M.	Pompēius, *Pompey,* Pompēio-, M.
Singular			
Nom.	**puer,** *a* (or *the*) *boy*	**ager**	**Pompēius**
Gen.	**puerī,** *a boy's, of a boy*	**agrī**	**Pompēī**
Dat.	**puerō,** *to* or *for a boy*	**agrō**	**Pompēiō**
Acc.	**puerum,** *a boy*	**agrum**	**Pompēium**
Abl.	**puerō,** *from, with,* or *by a boy*	**agrō**	**Pompēiō**
Voc.			**Pompēī**
Plural			
Nom.	**puerī,** (*the*) *boys*	**agrī**	**Pompēī**
Gen.	**puerōrum,** *boys', of boys*	**agrōrum**	**Pompēiōrum**
Dat.	**puerīs,** *to* or *for boys*	**agrīs**	**Pompēīs**
Acc.	**puerōs,** *boys*	**agrōs**	**Pompēiōs**
Abl.	**puerīs,** *from, with,* or *by boys*	**agrīs**	**Pompēīs**

25

SINGULAR CASES

148. (452.) **-us** and **-um** were originally **-os** and **-om**. But **-us** was used in the earliest times, **-um** somewhat later, and both became prevalent between 218 and 55 B.C. After **u** or **v**, however, the **-os** and **-om** were retained till towards 50 A.D.; also after **qu**; but **-cus** and **-cum** often displaced **-quos** and **-quom**: as, **equos, equom**, or **ecus, ecum**, *horse.*

149. (454.) Most masculine stems in **-ro-** preceded by a short vowel or a mute drop **-os** in the nominative, and have no vocative: as, stem **puero-**, N. **puer**, *boy.* Most masculines in **-ro-** have a vowel before **r** only in the nominative **-er**: as, **agro-**, N. **ager**. But in compounds ending in **-fer** and **-ger**, *carrying, having*, and the following, the vowel before -r̥ is a part of the stem, and is found in all the cases:

adulter, Līber, *paramour, Liber*   **puer, vir,** *boy, man*
gener, socer, *son-in-law, father-in-law*   **līberī, vesper,** *children, evening*

150. (456.) Substantives ending in **-ius** or **-ium** (but never adjectives) have commonly a single **-ī** in the genitive singular: as,

Vergilius, G. **Vergílī** (50); **fīlius,** *son*, G. **filī**; **cōnūbium,** *marriage,* G. **cōnūbi.**

151. (458.) Proper names ending in **-āius, -ēius**, or **ōius** have **-āī, -ēī,** or **-ōī** in the genitive and vocative singular and nominative plural, and **-āīs, -ēīs,** or **-ōīs** in the dative and ablative plural: as, **Gāius,** G., V., and N. Pl. **Gāī,** D. and Ab. Pl. **Gāīs; Pompēī, Pompēīs; Bōī, Bōīs.**

152. (459.) Latin proper names in **-ius** have the vocative in **-ī** only: as,

Vergilius, V. **Vergílī; Mercurius,** V. **Mercúrī** (50). So, also, **fīlius, fīlī,** *son;* **meus, mī,** *my,* from the stem **mio-**.

153. (460.) Town names and a few appellatives have a locative case in **-ī**: as, **Ephesī,** *at Ephesus;* **humī,** *on the ground;* **bellī,** *in war.*

PLURAL CASES

154. (462.) In the common genitive plural **-ōrum,** the **-o-** of the stem is lengthened. A genitive plural in **-um** is common from **dīvus** and **deus,** *god;* from **dēnārius,** *denar,* **modius,** *peck,* **nummus,** *money,*

26

sēstertius, *sesterce*, and **talentum**, *talent*, with numerals; and from cardinals and distributives: as, **dīvom, deum**; **mīlle sēstertium**; **ducentum**; **bīnum**. Other masculine substantives have occasionally this genitive: as, **līberum**, *of children*.

GREEK NOUNS

155. (466.) Greek stems in **-o-** are generally declined like Latin nouns, but in the singular sometimes have **-os** in the nominative, **-on** in the nominative or accusative neuter: as, Nominative **Īlios**; **Īlion** or **Ilium**. For **Androgeōs, Athŏs**, and **Panthūs**, see the dictionary.

CONSONANT STEMS

THE THIRD DECLENSION

Genitive singular **-is**, genitive plural **-um**

156. (467.) Consonant stems are mostly substantive, and include both gender words and neuters.

Comparatives and a few other words are adjective. For the gender of substantives, see 206.

157. (468.) The nominative of consonant stems ends in **-s** (or **-x**); or in **-n** (**-ō**), **-l**, **-r**, or **-s** of the stem, rarely in **-c** or **-t**.

158. (469.) Most consonant stems have one syllable less in the nominative than in the genitive.

Such words are called *Imparisyllabic* words or *Imparisyllables*: as, nominative **rēx**, *king*, one syllable; genitive **rēgis**, *of a king*, two syllables.

159. (470.) Many consonant stems have a double form: one form used in the nominative singular (neuters have this form in the accusative also), another form in the other cases: as,

iūdex, *juror*, stem of nominative iūdec-, of other cases iūdic-; **flāmen**, *special priest*, flāmin-; **virgō**, *maid*, virgin-; **auceps**, *fowler*, aucup-; **genus**, *race*, gener-; **trīstius**, *sadder*, trīstiōr-; **corpus**, *body*, corpor-; **pater**, *father*, patr-. In such instances the stem of the oblique cases is taken for brevity to represent both forms of the stem.

I. MUTE STEMS

160. (471.) Stems in a guttural mute, **-g-** or **-c-**, are declined as follows:

27

Examples Stems	rēx, *king*, rēg-, M.	dux, *leader*, duc-, M.	iūdex, *juror*, iūdic-, M., F.	Case endings
Singular				
Nom.	rēx, *a* (or *the*) *king*	dux	iūdex	-s (-x)
Gen.	rēgis, *a king's, of a king*	ducis	iūdicis	-is
Dat.	rēgī, *to* or *for a king*	ducī	iūdicī	-ī
Acc.	rēgem, *a king* [*king*	ducem	iūdicem	-em
Abl.	rēge, *from, with,* or *by a*	duce	iūdice	-e
Plural				
Nom.	rēgēs, (*the*) *kings*	ducēs	iūdicēs	-ēs
Gen.	rēgum, *kings', of kings*	ducum	iūdicum .	-um
Dat.	rēgibus, *to* or *for kings*	ducibus	iūdicibus	-ibus
Acc.	rēgēs, *kings* [*kings*	ducēs	iūdicēs	-ēs
Abl.	rēgibus, *from, with,* or *by*	ducibus	iūdicibus	-ibus

161. (472.) Examples of stems in -g-, with nominative -x, genitive -gis, are: grex, *herd;* lēx, *law;* rēmex, *oarsman;* coniūnx, *spouse.*

162. (473.) Examples of stems in -c-, with nominative -x, genitive -cis, are: fax, *torch;* pāx, *peace* (Pl. only N. and Ac.); nex, *murder;* apex, *point;* silex, *flint;* cervix, *neck;* rādix, *root;* vōx, *voice;* crux, *cross.*

163. (474.) Stems in a lingual mute, -d- or -t-, are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	custōs, *keeper*, custōd-, M.	aetās, *age*, aetāt-, F.	virtūs, *virtue*, virtūt-, F.	mīles, *soldier*, mīlit-, M.
Singular				
Nom.	custōs	aetās	virtūs	mīles
Gen.	custōdis	aetātis	virtūtis	mīlitis
Dat.	custōdī	aetātī	virtūtī	mīlitī
Acc.	custōdem	aetātem	virtūtem	mīlitem
Abl.	custōde	aetāte	virtūte	mīlite
Plural				
Nom.	custōdēs	aetātēs	virtūtēs	mīlitēs
Gen.	custōdum	aetātum	virtūtum	mīlitum
Dat.	custōdibus	aetātibus	virtūtibus	mīlitibus
Acc.	custōdēs	aetātēs	virtūtēs	mīlitēs
Abl.	custōdibus	aetātibus	virtūtibus	mīlitibus

164. (475 f.) Examples of stems in **-d-**, with nominative **-s**, genitive **-dis**, are: **obses**, *hostage;* **pēs**, *foot;* **hērēs**, *heir;* **mercēs**, *reward;* **lapis**, *stone;* **laus**, *praise;* **pecus**, *head of cattle;* **palūs**, *swamp.* **sēdēs**, F., *seat,* has an **-s-** stem, namely **-ēs**, in the nominative, and **sēd-** in the other cases; G. Pl. **sēdum.** The only example of a neuter stem in **-d-**, with nominative **-r**, genitive **-dis**, is **cor**, *heart,* **cordis**, no G. Pl.

165. (477 f.) Examples of stems in **-t-**, with nominative **-s**, genitive **-tis**, are: **lībertās**, *freedom;* **seges**, *crop;* **comes**, *companion;* **pariēs**, *wall;* **sacerdōs**, *priest;* **iuventūs**, *youth* (no plural). The only example of a neuter stem in **-t-**, with nominative **-t**, genitive **-tis**, is **caput**, *head,* **capitis**, and its compounds **occiput**, *back of the head,* and **sinciput**, *jole.*

166. (479.) Stems in a labial mute, **-b-** or **-p-**, are declined as follows:

mūniceps, *burgess,* stem **mūnicip-**, M., F. Singular: N. **mūniceps**, G. **mūnicipis**, D. **mūnicipī**, Ac. **mūnicipem**, Ab. **mūnicipe**. Plural: N. **mū-nicipēs**, G. **mūnicipum**, D. **mūnicipibus**, Ac. **mūnicipēs**, Ab. **mūnicipibus**.

167. (480.) Examples of stems in **-b-** or **-p-**, with nominative **-s**, genitive **-bis** or **-pis**, are the adjectives **caelebs**, *unmarried;* **particeps**, *sharing;* **prīnceps**, *first.*

II. STEMS IN A CONTINUOUS CONSONANT

168. (481.) Stems in **-l-** and **-n-** are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	**cōnsul,** *consul,* **cōnsul-**, M.	**leō,** *lion,* **leōn-**, M.	**imāgō,** *likeness,* **imāgin-**, F.	**nōmen,** *name,* **nōmin-**, Ne.
Singular				
Nom.	**cōnsul**	**leō**	**imāgō**	**nōmen**
Gen.	**cōnsulis**	**leōnis**	**imāginis**	**nōminis**
Dat.	**cōnsulī**	**leōnī**	**imāginī**	**nōminī**
Acc.	**cōnsulem**	**leōnem**	**imāginem**	**nōmen**
Abl.	**cōnsule**	**leōne**	**imāgine**	**nōmine**
Plural				
Nom.	**cōnsulēs**	**leōnēs**	**imāginēs**	**nōmina**
Gen.	**cōnsulum**	**leōnum**	**imāginum**	**nōminum**
Dat.	**cōnsulibus**	**leōnibus**	**imāginibus**	**nōminibus**
Acc.	**cōnsulēs**	**leōnēs**	**imāginēs**	**nōmina**
Abl.	**cōnsulibus**	**leōnibus**	**imāginibus**	**nōminibus**

29

169. (482.) Examples of stems in **-l-**, with nominative **-l**, genitive **-lis**, are : **sāl,** *salt* (no G. Pl.) ; **mel,** Ne., *honey* (plural only **mella**); **sōl,** *sun* (no G. Pl.) ; **exsul,** *exile.*

170. (483 ff.) Examples of stems in **-n-**, with nominative **-en**, genitive **-inis**, are : **flāmen,** *priest;* **tībīcen,** *piper;* **tubicen,** *trumpeter;* many neuters in **-men** (63): as, **certāmen,** *contest.* With nominative **-ō,** genitive **-ōnis:** **praedō,** *robber;* **opīniō,** *notion;* **cōgitātiō,** *thought.* With nominative **-ō,** genitive **-inis:** **ōrdō,** *rank;* **homo,** *human being;* **nēmō,** *nobody* (for G. and Ab., **nūllīus** and **nūllō** are generally used); **virgō,** *maiden;* **imāgō,** *likeness;* **sōlitūdō,** *loneliness.* **canis,** *dog,* stem **can-,** and **iuvenis,** *young person,* stem **iuven-,** have the nominative formed like that of **-i-** stems.

171. (487.) Stems in **-r-** and **-s-** are declined as follows :

Examples Stems	**pater,** *father* **patr-,** M.	**dolor,** *pain,* **dolōr-,** M.	**flōs,** *flower* **flōr-,** M.	**genus,** *race,* **gener-,** Ne.
Singular				
Nom.	**pater**	**dolor**	**flōs**	**genus**
Gen.	**patris**	**dolōris**	**flōris**	**generis**
Dat.	**patrī**	**dolōrī**	**flōrī**	**generī**
Acc.	**patrem**	**dolōrem**	**flōrem**	**genus**
Abl.	**patre**	**dolōre**	**flōre**	**genere**
Plural				
Nom.	**patrēs**	**dolōrēs**	**flōrēs**	**genera**
Gen.	**patrum**	**dolōrum**	**flōrum**	**generum**
Dat.	**patribus**	**dolōribus**	**flōribus**	**generibus**
Acc.	**patrēs**	**dolōrēs**	**flōrēs**	**genera**
Abl.	**patribus**	**dolōribus**	**flōribus**	**generibus**

172. (489.) Examples of stems in **-r-**, with nominative **-r**, genitive **-ris**, are : **agger,** *mound;* **carcer,** *jail;* **mulier,** *woman;* **māter,** *mother;* **arbor,** *tree;* **soror,** *sister;* **augur,** *augur;* **fulgur,** *lightning.*

173. (491.) Examples of stems in **-s-**, or **-r-** for **-s-**, with nominative **-s**, genitive **-ris**, are : **aes,** Ne., *copper;* **cinis,** *ashes;* **pulvīs,** *dust;* **mōs,** *custom;* **ōs,** Ne., *mouth, face* (no G. Pl.); **honōs** or **honor,** *honour;* **munus,** Ne., *gift;* **opus,** Ne., *work;* **corpus,** Ne., *body;* **lītus,** Ne., *shore;* **tellus,** *earth.*

174. (492 f.) **os,** Ne., *bone,* **ossis,** has no G. Pl. in good writers: **ossium** late. The two neuters **vīrus,** *gall, poison,* and **volgus** or **vulgus,** *the crowd,* have -o- stems, except in the nominative and accusative, and no plural: thus, N. and Ac **volgus,** G. **volgī,** D. and Ab. **volgō.** A masculine accusative **volgum** is sometimes found. The Greek neuter **pelagus,** *the deep,* has also G. **pelagī,** D. and Ab. **pelagō,** Pl. N. and Ac. **pelagē.**

<center>III. STEMS IN -u- OR -v-</center>

175. (494.) Four substantives with stems in -u- or -v-, **grūs,** F., *crane,* **gruis; sūs,** M., F., *sow, swine,* **suis; bōs,** M., F., *ox, cow,* **bovis;** and **nix** (176), F., *snow,* **nivis,** follow the consonant declension; also the genitive **Iovis,** and the other oblique cases of **Iuppiter.** But **sūs** has in the plural dative and ablative **suibus, sūbus,** or **subus; bōs** has in the plural genitive **boum** or **bovum,** and in the dative and ablative **bōbus,** or oftener **būbus; nix** has no genitive plural in good writers: **nivium** late, once **nivum.**

<center>UNUSUAL FORMATIONS</center>

176. (500.) The following have the nominative singular formed from a different stem from that of the other cases:

iter, *journey,* **itineris,** stems **iter-, itiner-; Iuppiter** (107), **Iovis; nix,** *snow,* **nivis,** stems **nigu-, niv-** (175); **senex,** *old man, man of forty or more,* **senis,** stems **senec-, sen-.** For **sēdēs,** *seat,* see 164.

177. (503.) Adjectives in the comparative degree have sometimes an ablative in -ī: as, **meliōrī,** *better,* for **meliōre.** Adjectives "of one ending" with consonant stems (251) have always -e, except **vetus,** *old,* which has sometimes **veterī** (253).

178. (504.) Town names and a few appellatives have a locative case in -ī: as, **Karthāginī,** *at Carthage;* **rūrī,** *a-field, in the country.*

<center>GREEK NOUNS</center>

179. (508.) Greek appellatives (5) of the consonant declension occasionally retain Greek case endings: as, **lampas,** *torch,* G. **lampados,** Ac. **lampada.** Plural: N. **lampades,** Ac. **lampadas. āēr,** *air,* has usually the accusative **āera,** and **aethēr,** *upper air,* always has **aethera.**

180. (509.) Greek proper names of the consonant declension are usually declined like Latin ones in prose. From Vergil and Propertius on, Greek case endings grow more and more frequent, especially in poetry; they are best learned for every name from the dictionary.

<center>31</center>

STEMS IN -i- AND MIXED STEMS
THE THIRD DECLENSION
Genitive singular -is, genitive plural -i-um.

181. (513.) Stems in -i- include both substantives and adjectives, gender words and neuters.

For the gender of substantives, see 206.

182. (514.) The nominative of gender stems in -i- ends usually in **-s** (or **-x**), sometimes in **-l** or **-r**; that of neuter substantives has no suffix, and ends usually in **-e**, sometimes in **-l** or **-r**.

183. (515.) Most stems in -i- have as many syllables in the nominative as in the genitive.

Such words are called *Parisyllabic* words, or *Parisyllables :* as, nominative **cīvis**, *citizen*, two syllables; genitive **cīvis**, *of a citizen*, also two syllables.

184. (516.) Stems in -i- are declined in the main like consonant stems, but have **-im** in the accusative of some substantives, and **-ī** in the ablative of adjectives, of some gender substantives, and of neuters; in the plural they have **-ium** in the genitive, **-īs** often in the accusative of gender words, and **-ia** in the nominative and accusative neuter.

I. PARISYLLABLES

185. (517.) Parisyllabic gender stems in -i- with the nominative in **-is** are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	tussis, *cough*, tussi-, F.	turris, *tower*, turri-, F.	amnis, *river*, amni-, M.	hostis, *enemy*, hosti-, M., F.	Stem and case endings
Singular					
Nom.	tussis	turris	amnis	hostis	-is
Gen.	tussis	turris	amnis	hostis	-is
Dat.	tussī	turrī	amnī	hostī	-ī
Acc.	tussim	turrim, -em	amnem	hostem	-im, -em
Abl.	tussī	turrī, -e	amne, -ī	hoste	-ī, -ē
Plural					
Nom.	tussēs	turrēs	amnēs	hostēs	-ēs
Gen.		turrium	amnium	hostium	-ium
Dat.		turribus	amnibus	hostibus	-ibus
Acc.	tussīs, -ēs	turrīs, -ēs	amnīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	-īs, -ēs
Abl.		turribus	amnibus	hostibus	-ibus

186. (518.) Like the singular of **tussis** are declined the defectives **sitis**, *thirst*, Ac. **sitim**, Ab. **sitī**, no plural ; and **vīs**, *power*, Ac. **vim**, Ab. **vī**.   Plural: N. **vīrēs**, G. **vīrium**, D. and Ab. **vīribus**, Ac. **vīrīs** or **vīrēs**.

187. (519.) The following feminines are declined like **turris**, with -im or -em in the accusative, and -ī or -e in the ablative:

clāvis, *key*	**nāvis**, *vessel*	**sēmentis**, *planting*
febris, *fever*	**puppis**, *stern*	**strigilis**, *skin-scraper*

188. (521.) The following are declined like **amnis**, with -em in the accusative, and -ī or -e in the ablative:

avis, *bird*	**cīvis**, *citizen*	**fūstis**, *club*
bīlis, *bile*	**classis**, *fleet*	**īgnis**, *fire*

189. (522.) Most parisyllabic stems in -i-, with the nominative in -is, are declined like **hostis**: as, **ēnsis**, *glaive;* **piscis**, *fish;* **aedis**, *temple,* Pl. *house* (124); **vītis**, *vine;* and a great many others.

190. (523.) Parisyllables in -i- with the nominative in -ēs have their other cases like those of **hostis**: such are:

caedēs, *bloodshed;* **clādēs**, *disaster;* **mōlēs**, *pile;* **nūbēs**, *cloud;* **prōlēs**, *offspring,* no Pl.; **pūbēs**, *young population,* no Pl.; **rūpēs**, *crag;* **subolēs**, *offspring;* and some others.

191. (526.) Parisyllabic neuters in -i-, with the nominative in -e are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	**sedīle**, *seat,* sedīli-, Ne.		**mare**, *sea,* mari-, Ne.		Stem and case endings	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	S.	Pl.
Nom.	sedīle	sedīlia	mare	maria	-e	-ia
Gen.	sedīlis	sedīlium	maris		-is	-ium
Dat.	sedīlī	sedīlibus	marī		-ī	-ibus
Acc.	sedīle	sedīlia	mare	maria	-e	-ia
Abl.	sedīlī	sedīlibus	marī		-ī	-ibus

II. IMPARISYLLABLES

192. (529.) Some stems in a mute followed by -i-, and a few in -li- and -ri- drop the -i- in the nominative, and thus become imparisyllables.   Gender stems of this class are like

consonant stems in the singular (except the ablative of ad-
jectives, which has usually -ī), and are called Mixed Stems.

193. (530.) Imparisyllabic stems in -i- are declined as fol-
lows:

Examples Stems	arx, *citadel* arci-, F.	pars, *part*, parti-, F.	urbs, *city*, urbi-, F.	animal, *animal*, animāli-, Ne.
Singular				
Nom.	arx	pars	urbs	animal
Gen.	arcis	partis	urbis	animālis
Dat.	arcī	partī	urbī	animālī
Acc.	arcem	partem	urbem	animal
Abl.	arce	parte	urbe	animālī
Plural				
Nom.	arcēs	partēs	urbēs	animālia
Gen.	arcium	partium	urbium	animālium
Dat.	arcibus	partibus	urbibus	animālibus
Acc.	arcīs, -ēs	partīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	animālia
Abl.	arcibus	partibus	urbibus	animālibus

194. (531.) Examples of stems in -ci-, with nominative -x, genitive
-cis, are: **supplex**, *suppliant;* **falx**, *sickle;* **lūx**, *light* (no G. Pl.) ; and
many adjectives: as, **audāx**, *daring;* **fēlīx**, *happy;* **ferōx**, *wild.*

195. (533.) Examples of stems in -ti-, with nominative -s (-x), geni-
tive -tis, are: **dēns**, *tooth;* **fōns**, *fountain;* **mōns**, *mountain*, **pōns**, *bridge;*
gēns, *clan;* **ars**, *art;* **mors**, *death;* **nox**, *night.*

196. (536.) Examples of stems in -li-, with nominative -l, genitive
-lis, are: **puteal**, *well-curb;* **vectīgal**, *indirect tax;* **tribūnal**, *tribunal;*
vigil, *wide-awake*, adjective, Ab. -ī, as substantive -e, G. Pl. **vigilum**, no
Ne. Pl. N. or Ac.

197. (537.) Examples of stems in -ri-, with nominative -r, genitive
-ris, are: **calcar**, Ne., *spur;* **exemplar**, Ne., *pattern;* and adjectives, **pār**,
equal; **impār**, *unequal;* **über**, *fruitful;* **memor**, *remembering.*

SINGULAR CASES

198. (547.) The accusative singular of gender substantives usually
has **-em**, like consonant stems; but a few substantives with the nomi-
native in **-is** have **-im** only, and some have either **-im** or **-em.**

34

199. (548.) Accusatives in -im

Are **sitim, tussim, vim,**	*thirst, cough, strength*
And **būrim, cucumim.**	*ploughtail, cucumber*

200. (552.) In the ablative, gender substantives have usually **-e**, and neuters and adjectives have **-ī**: as, **hoste,** *enemy;* **marī,** *sea;* **ācrī,** *sharp;* **brevī,** *short;* **audācī,** *daring.*

201. (553.) Of gender substantives with the nominative in **-is,** a few have only **-ī** in the ablative, and many have either **-ī** or **-e.**

202. (554.) These ablatives have only **-ī**:

secūrī, sitī, tussī, vī:	*axe, thirst, cough, strength*
canālī, cucumī.	*conduit, cucumber*

Some names of rivers and cities have only **-ī**: as, **Tiberī, Hispalī.** The locative also ends in **-ī**: as, **Neāpolī,** *at Neapolis.*

203. (560.) Present participles, when used as adjectives, have **-ī** in the ablative, otherwise **-e**: as,

ā sapientī virō, *by a wise man;* **adulēscente,** *youth,* substantive; **Rōmulō rēgnante,** *in the reign of Romulus,* ablative absolute.

PLURAL CASES

204. (562.) In the plural, gender nominatives have **-es,** rarely **-īs** or **-eis,** and gender accusatives have **-īs** or **-ēs** indifferently, sometimes **-eis;** after about 50 A.D., **-ēs** was the prevalent ending for both cases. Neuters add **-a** to the stem, making **-ia.**

GREEK NOUNS

205. (565.) Greek stems in **-i-** are usually declined like Latin ones, with the accusative in **-im,** and ablative in **-ī.** But the accusative sometimes has **-n**: as, **Charybdin**: similarly **Capyn**; and a vocative occurs: as, **Charybdi.**

GENDER OF CONSONANT STEMS AND -i- STEMS

206. (570.) The gender of many of these substantives is determined by their meaning (117–120); that of participles used as substantives follows the gender of the substantive understood ; Greek substantives follow the Greek gender. The gender of other words may be conveniently arranged for the memory according to the nominative endings as follows.

MASCULINE

207. (571.) Imparisyllables in -ēs
          And -es with Masculines we place;
          And Masculines we further know
          By -er and -or, by -ōs and -ō.

Thus: **caespes,** *sod;* **pēs,** *foot;* **agger,** *mound;* **sermō,** *speech;* **pallor,** *paleness;* **flōs,** *flower.*

208. (572.) Exceptions: Imparisyllables in -ēs and -es:

          Neuter **aes**; but **requiēs**
          And **quiēs,** also **compedēs**
          And **mercēs,** also **merges, teges**
          Are Feminine as well as **seges.**

209. (573.) Exceptions in -er:

          Thirteen Neuters end in -er:
          acer, verbere, cadāver,
          iter, piper, vĕr, papāver,
             cicer, tūber,
             sīler, ūber,
             siser, sūber.

210. (574.) Exceptions in -ō:

          The words in -ō with stems in -ĭn-,
          And **carō,** *flesh,* are Feminine;
          And words of Action in -iō,
          But **cardō, ōrdō, turbō,** no!

211. (575.) Exceptions in -or:

          Neuters four there are in -or:
          ador, aequor, marmor, cor.
          Feminine is only this,
          arbor (arbōs), arboris.

212. (576.) Exceptions in -ōs:

          Three feminines there are in -ōs,
          cōs, arbōs, (**arboris**), and **dōs.**
          In -ōs is Neuter one alone,
          ōs (ōris), *mouth,*—short -os means *bone.*

213. (577.) The Feminines have endings six:
A consonant with -s (or -x);
-ās, -aus, and -is; and with these place
All Parisyllables in -ēs.

Thus: **nūbēs,** *cloud;* **aetās,** *age;* **laus,** *praise;* **nāvis,** *ship;* **urbs,** *city;*
pāx, *peace.*

214. (578.) Exceptions in -ās:
The only Masculine is **ās;**
The only Neuter word is **vās;**
Unless we **nefās** add and **fās.**

215. (579.) Exceptions in -is:
Masculine are all in -nis;
Nine above a score in -is:
axis, callis, caulis, anguis,
fascis, fūstis, lapis, sanguĭs,
piscis, postis, pulvĭs, ēnsis,
torquis, torris, unguis, mēnsis,
vēctis, vermis, vōmis, collis,
glīs, canālis, also **follis,**
cassēs, sentēs, veprēs, orbis,
cucumis, and sometimes **corbis.**

216. (580.) Exceptions in -s preceded by a consonant:
Masculine is **fōns,**
A fountain,
dēns and **pōns** and **mōns,**
A mountain.

217. (581.) Exceptions in -ex:
Masculine are all in -ex,
But **lēx, supellēx, precem, nex.**

218. (582.) The Neuters end in -c and -e,
In -ur, -us, -ūs, -ar, -l, -n, -t.

Thus: **lac,** *milk;* **mare,** *sea;* **animal,** *animal;* **carmen,** *song;* **caput,**
head; **calcar,** *spur;* **fulgur,** *lightning;* **corpus,** *body;* **iūs,** *right.*

37

219. (583.) Exceptions: Masculine :

Among the Masculines enroll
furfur and **pecten, sāl** and **sōl.**

220. (584.) Feminines in -us and -ūs:
iuventūs, virtūs, servitūs,
senectūs, tellūs, incūs, salūs,
With pecŭs (pecŭdis), and **palūs.**

STEMS IN -u-
THE FOURTH DECLENSION
Genitive singular -ūs, genitive plural -u-um

221. (585.) Stems in **-u-** are substantive only, and mostly masculine.

222. (586.) There are only three neuters in common use, **cornū,** *horn,* **genū,** *knee,* and **verū,** *a spit.* But some cases of other neuters are used: as, ablative **pecū,** *flock.*

223. (587.) The nominative of stems in -u- ends, including the stem vowel, in -u-s in gender words, and in lengthened -ū of the stem in neuters.

224. (588.) Most substantives in -u- are masculines in -tu- or -su-, often defective in case. The following words are feminine: **acus,** *pin, needle,* **domus,** *house,* **manus,** *hand,* **porticus,** *colonnade,* **tribus,** *tribe;* and the plurals **īdūs,** *ides,* and **quīnquātrūs,** *feast of Minerva;* rarely **penus,** *store,* and **specus,** *cave.*

225. (589.) Stems in **-u-** are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	**flūctus,** *wave,* **flūctu-,** M.	**cornū,** *horn,* **cornu-,** Ne.	Stem and case endings	
			M.	Ne.
Singular				
Nom.	**flūctus,** *a* (or *the*) *wave*	**cornū**	-us	-ū
Gen.	**flūctus,** *a wave's, of a wave*	**cornūs**	-ūs	-ūs
Dat.	**flūctuī, -ū,** *to* or *for a wave*	**cornū**	-uī, -ū	-ū
Acc.	**flūctum,** *a wave*	**cornū**	-um	-ū
Abl.	**flūctū,** *from, with,* or *by a wave*	**cornū**	-ū	-ū
Plural				
Nom.	**flūctūs,** (*the*) *waves*	**cornua**	-ūs	-ua
Gen.	**flūctuum,** *waves', of waves*	**cornuum**	-uum	-uum
Dat.·	**flūctibus,** *to* or *for waves*	**cornibus**	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	**flūctūs,** *waves* [*waves*	**cornua**	-ūs	-ua
Abl.	**flūctibus,** *from, with,* or *by*	**cornibus**	-ibus	-ibus

SINGULAR CASES

226. (590.) In the genitive, the uncontracted form **-uis** sometimes occurs. A genitive in **-tī** is rather common: as, **senātī**, *senate*. In the dative, **-uī** is regularly contracted to **-ū** in neuters and often in gender words.

PLURAL CASES

227. (591.) In the genitive plural, **-ūm** for **-u-um** is rare: as, **currūm**, *chariots*.

228. (592.) In the dative and ablative plural, the following retain **-u-bus**: **acus**, *pin, needle*, **arcus**, *bow*, **partus**, *birth*, **tribus**, *tribe*. The following have **-u-bus** or **-i-bus**: **artūs**, plural, *joints*, **lacus**, *lake*, **portus**, *haven*, **specus**, *cave*, **genū**, *knee*, **verū**, *a spit*. All other words have **-i-bus** only.

229. (594.) **domus**, *house*, F., has stems of two forms, **domu-** and **domo-**; it is declined as follows: N. **domus**, G. **domūs**, Locative **domī**, D. **domuī** or **domō**, Ac. **domum**, Ab. **domō** or **domū**. Plural: N. **domūs**, G. **domuum**, later **domōrum**, D. and Ab. **domibus**, Ac. **domōs**, less commonly **domūs**.

STEMS IN -ē-

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

Genitive singular -ĕī, genitive plural -ē-rum

230. (596.) Stems in **-ē-** are substantive only, and feminine.

231. (597.) **diēs**, *day*, is always masculine in the plural, and commonly in the singular; but the feminine is common when **diēs** denotes length of time or a set day. **merīdiēs**, *midday*, is masculine and singular only.

232. (598.) The nominative of stems in **-ē-** ends, including the stem vowel, in **-ē-s**.

233. (599.) Stems in **-ē-** are of two classes:

234. (600.) Stems of the first class have one or two syllables; there are four of them: **rēs**, *thing*, **spēs**, *hope*, **diēs**, *day*, and **fidēs**, *faith*.

Of this class, **rēs** and **diēs** have a plural throughout ; **spēs** has only the nominative and accusative plural, and **fidēs** has no plural.

235. (601.) Stems in **-ē-** of the first class are declined as follows :

Examples Stems	rēs, *thing*, rē-, F.	diēs, *day*, diē-, M.	Stem and case endings
Singular			
Nom.	**rēs,** *a* (or *the*) *thing*	**diēs**	**-ēs**
Gen.	**rĕi, rēī,** *a thing s, of a thing*	**diēī, diēī**	**-ĕī, -ēī, -ēī**
Dat.	**rĕi, rēī,** *to* or *for a thing*	**diēī, diēī**	**-ĕī, -ēī, -ēī**
Acc.	**rem,** *a thing*	**diem**	**-em**
Abl.	**rē,** *from, with,* or *by a thing*	**diē**	**-ē**
Plural			
Nom.	**rēs,** (*the*) *things*	**diēs**	**-ēs**
Gen.	**rērum,** *things', of things*	**diērum**	**-ērum**
Dat.	**rēbus,** *to* or *for things*	**diēbus**	**-ēbus**
Acc.	**rēs,** *things*	**diēs**	**-ēs**
Abl.	**rēbus,** *from, with,* or *by things*	**diēbus**	**-ēbus**

236. (602.) **diēs** has rarely a genitive **diī.** A genitive or dative in **-ē** is sometimes found : as, **rē, diē, fidē.**

237. (604.) Stems of the second class are formed by the suffix **-iē-** or **-tiē-,** and have three or more syllables.

This class, which is a modification of stems in **-ā-,** has usually no genitive, dative, or plural. Many stems, especially those in **-tiē-,** have also a collateral form in **-ā-,** and the genitive and dative, when used at all, are commonly from a stem in **-ā-.**

238. (605.) Stems in **-ē-** of the second class are declined as follows :

lūxuriēs, *extravagance*, stem lūxuriē-, F.
Nom. lūxuriēs, *Acc.* lūxuriem, *Abl.* lūxuriē

———————

THE ADJECTIVE

239. (608.) Adjectives are declined like substantives, and it has been shown already how their cases are formed. But they differ from substantives in having different forms in some of their cases to denote different genders; it is convenient, therefore, to put their complete declension together.

240. (609.) Adjective stems end in -o- and -ā-, in a consonant, or in -i-.

241. (611.) Adjectives are often conveniently said to be "*of three endings*," "*of two endings*," or "*of one ending*."

By the "ending" is meant the ending of the nominative singular: thus, **bonus, bona, bonum,** *good,* and **ācer, ācris, ācre,** *sharp,* are "of three endings"; **brevis, breve,** *short,* is "of two endings" (119); and **audāx,** *bold,* is "of one ending" (119).

STEMS IN -o- AND -ā-

242. (613.) Most adjectives with stems in -o- and -ā- are declined as follows:

Example Stems	M. **bonus,** F. **bona,** Ne. **bonum,** *good,* bono-, bonā-					
	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Voc.	bone					

243. (616.) Some stems in -ro- preceded by a short vowel end in -r in the nominative singular masculine and have no vocative (149); they are declined as follows:

Example Stems	M. līber, F. lībera, Ne. līberum, *free,* lībero-, līberā-					
	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

Such are : compounds, chiefly poetical, ending in **-fer** and **-ger**, *bearing, carrying, having:* as, **caelifer**, *heaven-upholding;* **corniger**, *horned;* also the following:

(alter, 245), **asper**, *other, rough*   **satur, sēmifer**, *full, half-beast*
lacer, līber, *torn, free*   **tener, Trēver**, *tender, Treveran*
gibber, miser, *hump-backed, forlorn*

dexter, *right*, has **dextera, dexterum**, or **dextra, dextrum**, G. **dexterī**, or **dextrī**, etc.

244. (617.) Other stems in **-ro-** have a vowel before **r** only in the nominative singular masculine **-er** (149); they are declined as follows:

Example Stems	M. aeger, F. aegra, Ne. aegrum, *ill,* aegro-, aegrā-					
	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	aeger	aegra	aegrum	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
Gen.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī	aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
Dat.	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
Acc.	aegrum	aegram	aegrum	aegrōs	aegrās	aegra
Abl.	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

245. (618.) Nine adjectives or adjective pronouns have the pronoun form **-īus** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative

42

singular, for masculine, feminine, and neuter alike ; they are
the following:

alius, *another*	ūnus, *one*	alter, *the other*
sōlus, *alone*	ūllus, *any at all*	uter, *which of the two*
tōtus, *whole*	nūllus, *no*	neuter, *neither*

246. (619.) Of the above words, those with the nominative in -us are
declined like ūnus (263). But alius has N. and Ac. Ne. aliud; for the
G., alterīus is always used, except in the combination alīus modī, *of
another sort*. alter is declined like līber (243), except in the genitive
singular alterīus and dative alterī. For uter and its derivatives, see 291.

247. (620.) The ordinary genitive and dative of -o- and -ā- stems,
from some of the above words, is sometimes found : G. and D. aliae,
sōlae, alterae, D. aliō, nūllō, etc.

CONSONANT STEMS

OF TWO ENDINGS

248. (621.) The only consonant stems of two endings are
comparatives ; they are declined as follows :

Example Stems	M. and F. **trīstior**, Ne. **trīstius**, *sadder*, **trīstiōr-, trīstius-**			
	Singular		Plural	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	trīstior	trīstius	trīstiōrēs	trīstiōra
Gen.	trīstiōris	trīstiōris	trīstiōrum	trīstiōrum
Dat.	trīstiōrī	trīstiōrī	trīstiōribus	trīstiōribus
Acc.	trīstiōrem	trīstius	trīstiōres	trīstiōra
Abl.	trīstiōre	trīstiōre	trīstiōribus	trīstiōribus

249. (622.) The ablative rarely has -ī for -e: as, meliōrī (177); the
accusative plural masculine and feminine rarely have -īs: as, meliōrīs.

250. (623.) plūs, *more*, has in the singular only Ne. N. and Ac. plūs,
G. plūris, and Ab. plūre. Plural: N. M. and F. plūrēs. Ne. plūra, G.
plūrium, D. and Ab. plūribus, Ac. M. and F. plūrēs or plūrīs, Ne. plūra.

43

OF ONE ENDING

251. (624.) A dozen adjectives " of one ending," mostly words applying to persons, with consonant stems throughout, have no nominative or accusative neuter plural; they are:

caelebs, compos, *unmarried, master of*	**pūbēs, impūbēs,** *mangrown, immature*
***dēses, dīves,** *lazy, rich*	**sōspes, superstes,** *safe, surviving*
particeps, prīnceps, *sharing, first*	**pauper, cicur,** *poor, tame*

252. (625.) When these adjectives have a neuter, it is the same as the gender forms, except in the accusative singular; they are declined as follows:

M. F. and Ne. **dīves,** *rich,* stem **dīvit-.**

Singular: N. **dīves,** G. **dīvitis,** D. **dīvitī,** Ac. M. and F. **dīvitem,** Ne. **dīves,** Ab. **dīvite.**   Plural: N. and Ac. M. and F. **dīvitēs,** G. **dīvitum,** D. and Ab. **dīvitibus.**

253. (626.) **vetus,** *old,* G. **veteris,** is also declined like **dīves,** but has a Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. **vetera;** the Ab. S. is regularly **vetere,** but **veterī** is sometimes used.

STEMS IN -i-

OF THREE ENDINGS

254. (627.) A dozen adjectives with stems in **-bri-, -cri-,** or **-tri-,** have a distinctive form in **-er** for the masculine nominative singular; they are:

celeber, *thronged*	**volucer,** *winged*	**pedester,** *foot-*
salūber, *healthy*	**campester,** *of a plain*	**puter,** *rotten*
ācer, *keen*	**equester,** *cavalry-*	**silvester,** *woody*
alacer, *lively*	**palūster,** *of a swamp*	**terrester,** *land-*

So also **celer,** *swift.* The names of months, **September, Octōber, November, December,** are also adjectives with stems in **-bri-,** but are not used in the neuter. Other adjectives with stems in **-bri-, -cri-,** or **-tri-,** have no distinctive form for the masculine nominative singular: as, **muliebris, mediocris, inlūstris.**

44

255. (628.) These adjectives are declined as follows:

Example Stem	M. ācer, F. ācris, Ne. ācre, *sharp,* ācri-					
	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

256. (629.) In all cases but the masculine nominative singular these adjectives are just like those in -i- "of two endings" (257). But the ablative always has -ī, never -e, and the genitive plural always has -ium, never -um. In **celer** the second **e** belongs to the stem: M. **celer**, F. **celeris**, Ne. **celere**; the genitive plural, which is **celerum**, is found only as a substantive.

OF TWO ENDINGS

257. (630.) Adjectives "of two endings" with stems in -i- are declined as follows:

Example Stem	M. and F. brevis, Ne. breve, *short,* brevi-			
	Singular		Plural	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	brevis	breve	brevēs	brevia
Gen.	brevis	brevis	brevium	brevium
Dat.	brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus
Acc.	brevem	breve	brevīs, -ēs	brevia
Abl.	brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus

258. (631.) The ablative is sometimes **-e** when these adjectives are used substantively or in verse. The genitive plural is rarely **-um** for **-ium**.

OF ONE ENDING

259. (632.) Most adjectives "of one ending" have a consonant form of the stem in the singular, except usually in the ablative (260), and an **-i-** stem in the plural; they are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	M. F. and Ne. **audāx**, *bold*, **audāc(i)-**		M. F. and Ne. **regēns**, *ruling*, **regent(i)-**	
Singular	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	audāx	audāx	regēns	regēns
Gen.	audācis	audācis	regentis	regentis
Dat.	audācī	audācī	regentī	regentī
Acc.	audācem	audāx	regentem	regēns
Abl.	audācī	audācī	regente, -ī	regente, -ī
Plural	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	audācēs	audācia	regentēs	regentia
Gen.	audācium	audācium	regentium	regentium
Dat.	audācibus	audācibus	regentibus	regentibus
Acc.	audācīs, -ēs	audācia	regentīs, -ēs	regentia
Abl.	audācibus	audācibus	regentibus	regentibus

260. (633.) Present participles have -ī in the ablative, when they are used as adjectives, otherwise **-e** (203).

261. (636.) The following have -ī in the ablative, but **-um** of consonant stems in the genitive plural, and no nominative or accusative neuter plural: **inops**, *without means*, **vigil**, *wide-awake*, **memor**, *remembering*, **dēgener**, *degenerate*.

THE NUMERAL ADJECTIVE

262. (637.) Of the cardinals, **ūnus, duo, trēs,** and the hundreds except **centum** are declined. The other cardinals are not declined (see 1074).

263. (638.) **ūnus,** *one,* is declined as follows:

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
Voc.	ūne					

264. (639.) **duo,** *two,* and **trēs,** *three,* are declined as follows:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duo or duōs	duās	duo	trēs or trīs	tria
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

265. (640.) **ambō,** *both,* is declined like **duo,** but has -ō in the nominative and accusative, and only **ambōrum** and **ambārum** in the genitive plural. For the forms **duo, ambō,** see 123.

266. (641.) Hundreds are declined like the plural of **bonus** (242).

267. (642.) The adjective **mīlle,** *thousand,* is not declined. The substantive has in the singular only N. Ac. Ab. **mīlle,** but a complete plural: N. and Ac. **mīllia (mīlia),** G. **mīllium (mīlium),** D. and Ab. **mīllibus (mīlibus).**

47

268. (643.) Ordinals, as **prīmus**, *first*, and distributives, as **bīnī**, *two each*, are declined like **bonus** (242). But distributives seldom have a singular, and often have the genitive plural **-um** (154): as, **bīnum.**

THE PRONOUŃ

THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

269. (644.) The pronoun of the first person, **ego**, *I*, of the second person, **tū**, *thou*, and the reflexive pronoun, **suī**, **sē**, *himself, herself, itself, themselves*, are declined as follows:

	ego, *I*		tū, *thou*		suī, *self*
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing. & Plur.
Nom.	**ego**	**nōs**	**tū**	**vōs**	
Gen.	**meī**	**nostrum, -trī**	**tuī**	**vestrum, -trī**	**suī**
Dat.	**mihī, mī**	**nōbīs**	**tibī**	**vōbīs**	**sibī**
Acc.	**mē**	**nōs**	**tē**	**vōs**	**sē**
Abl.	**mē**	**nōbīs**	**tē**	**vōbīs**	**sē**

270. (650.) Emphasis is given (1.) by reduplication (56): N. **tūte**; with **-ne** interrogative, **tūtine**; Ac. and Ab. **mēmē, tētē**, rare; **sēsē**, very common. (2.) by **-met** added to any case but the genitive plural: as, **egomet**; but **tū** has only **tūtemet** or **tūtimet.**

THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVE

271. (652.) The possessives of **ego, tū**, and **suī**, are **meus**, *mine*, **tuus**, *thine*, and **suus**, *his, her, its, their* (*own*), declined like **bonus** (242), except that **meus** has **mī** in the vocative singular masculine (152); those of **nōs** and **vōs** are **noster**, *our*, and **voster**, later **vester**, *your*, declined like **aeger** (244).

272. (655.) Emphasis is given by **-pte**, which is oftenest found with the ablative: as, **suōpte.**

48

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

273. (660.) The demonstrative pronouns are **hīc**, *this, this near me;* **iste, istic,** *that, that near you;* and **ille, illic,** *yonder, that.*

274. (661.) The demonstrative pronoun **hīc,** *this, this near me,* is declined as follows:

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**	**MASC.**	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**
Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

275. (663.) The full form in **-ce** is found occasionally after **-s**: **hūiusce, hōsce, hāsce, hīsce.** Before **-ne** interrogative it is retained in the form **-ci-**: as, **hīcine.**

276. (664.) The nominative plural feminine is sometimes **haec.**

277. (666.) The demonstrative pronouns **iste,** *that, that near you,* and **ille,** *yonder,* are declined alike, as follows:

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**	**MASC.**	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

THE DETERMINATIVE PRONOUN

278. (671.) The determinative pronoun is, *that, the afore-said, the one*, is declined as follows:

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	**Fem.**	**Neut.**	**Masc.**	**Fem.**	**Neut.**
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī, or ī	eae	ea
Gen.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	ĕī	ĕī	ĕī	eīs, iīs, or īs	eīs, iīs, or īs	eīs, iīs, or īs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs, or īs	eīs, iīs, or īs	eīs, iīs, or īs

THE PRONOUN OF IDENTITY

279. (676.) The pronoun of identity, **īdem**, *the same*, is declined as follows:

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	**Fem.**	**Neut.**	**Masc.**	**Fem.**	**Neut.**
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem or īdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem or īsdem	eīsdem or īsdem	eīsdem or īsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem or īsdem	eīsdem or īsdem	eīsdem or īsdem

280. (677.) In manuscripts and editions, the plural nominative masculine is often written **iīdem**, and the dative and ablative **iīsdem**.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

281. (679.) The intensive pronoun **ipse**, *himself*, stems **ipso-, ipsā-**, is declined like **ille** (277), but has the nominative and accusative neuter singular **ipsum**.

THE RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE PRONOUN

quī AND quis

282. (681.) The stem **qui-**, or **quo-, quā-**, is used in three ways: as a relative, *who, which;* as an interrogative, *who? which? what?* as an indefinite, *any.*

283. (682.) The relative **quī**, *who, which,* is declined as follows:

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	**Fem.**	**Neut.**	**Masc.**	**Fem.**	**Neut.**
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

284. (683.) The interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod,** *which? what?* is declined like the relative **quī** (283).

285. (684.) The interrogative substantive has in the nominative singular **quis, quid,** *who? what?* the rest is like **quī** (283).

286. (685.) **quis** interrogative is sometimes used adjectively with appellatives: as, **quis senātor?** *what senator?* And **quī** is sometimes used substantively: as, **quī prīmus Ameriam nūntiat?** *who is the first to bring the tidings to Ameria?*

287. (686.) The indefinite **quis** or **quī,** *one, any,* has the following forms:

quis and **quid** masculine and neuter substantives, **quī** and **quod** adjectives; feminine singular nominative and neuter plural nominative and accusative commonly **qua,** also **quae.** The rest is like **quī** (283).

288. (688 f.) The dative or ablative plural is sometimes **quīs.** The ablative or locative is sometimes **quī:** as an interrogative, *how?* as a relative, *wherewith, whereby,* masculine, feminine, or neuter; especially referring to an indefinite person, and with **cum** attached, **quīcum;** and as an indefinite, *somehow.*

289. (691.) The derivatives of **qui̅** and **quis** have commonly **quis** and **quid** as substantives, and **qui̅** and **quod** as adjectives. Forms requiring special mention are named below:

290. (692.) quisquis, *whoever, whatever, everybody who, everything which*, an indefinite relative, has only these forms in common use: **quisquis, quicquid** or **quidquid**, as adjective **quōquō.**

aliquis or **aliqui̅, aliqua, aliquid** or **aliquod**, *some one, some;* Ab. M. sometimes, Ne. often **aliqui̅** (288). Pl. Ne. N. and Ac. only **aliqua.**

ecquis or **ecqui̅, ecqua** or **ecquae, ecquid** or **ecquod**, *any?*

qui̅cumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whichever, everybody who, everything which.*

qui̅dam, quaedam, quiddam or **quoddam**, *a, a certain, some one, so and so;* Ac. quendam, quandam. Pl. G. quōrundam, quārundam.

qui̅libet, quaelibet, quidlibet or **quodlibet**, *any you please.*

quispiam, quaepiam, quippiam, quidpiam or **quodpiam**, *any, any one.*

quisquam, quicquam or **quidquam**, *anybody at all, anything at all*, generally a substantive, less frequently an adjective, *any at all.* There is no distinctive feminine form. No plural.

quisque, quaeque, quicque, quidque or **quodque**, *each.* Sometimes **ūnus** is prefixed: **ūnusquisque**; both parts are declined.

qui̅vi̅s, quaevi̅s, quidvi̅s or **quodvi̅s**, *which you will.*

uter

291. (693.) **uter, utra, utrum**, *whether? which of the two?* has the genitive singular **utri̅us**, and the dative singular **utri̅.**

The rest is like **aeger** (244). **uter** is sometimes relative, *whichsoever*, or indefinite, *either of the two.*

292. (694.) The derivatives of **uter** are declined like **uter**; they are:

neuter, *neither of the two*, genitive **neutri̅us**, always with **i̅.**

utercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque, *whichever of the two, either of the two.*

uterlibet, *whichever you please.*

uterque, *whichsoever, both.* G. always utriusque.

utervīs, *whichever you wish.*

alteruter, F. altera utra, Ne. alterutrum or alterum utrum, *one or the other,* G. alterīus utrīus, D. alterutrī, Ac. M. alterutrum or alterum utrum, F. alteram utram, Ab. alterutrō or alterō utrō, F. alterā utrā. No Pl.

THE ADVERB

NOUNS AS ADVERBS

293. (696.) Adverbs are chiefly noun or pronoun cases which have become fixed in a specific form and with a specific meaning. Many of these words were still felt to be live cases, even in the developed period of the language; with others the consciousness of their noun character was lost.

294. (697.) Three cases are used adverbially: the accusative, the ablative, and the locative.

295. (698.) The rather indeterminate meaning of the accusative and the ablative is sometimes more exactly defined by a preposition. The preposition may either accompany its usual case: as, admodum, īlicō; or it may be loosely prefixed, with more of the nature of an adverb than of a preposition, to a case with which it is not ordinarily used: as, intereā.

(1.) ACCUSATIVE

(*a.*) ACCUSATIVE OF SUBSTANTIVES

296. (699 f.) vicem, *instead;* partim, *in part;* admodum, *to a degree, very;* invicem, *in turn, each other;* cautim, *warily;* statim, *at once;* sēnsim, *perceptibly, gradually;* fūrtim, *stealthily.*

(*b.*) ACCUSATIVE OF ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

297. (701.) Neuters: all comparative adverbs in -ius (90): as, doctius, *more learnedly;* so minus, *less;* prīmum, *first,* secundum, *secondly,* etc.; tum, *then;* commodum, *just in time;* minimum, *at least;* postrēmum, *at last;* facile, *easily;* recēns, *lately.* Plural: cētera, *for the rest.*

298. (702.) Feminines: **bifāriam,** *twofold;* **tam,** *so;* **quam,** *as,* *how.* Plural: **aliās,** *on other occasions.*

(2.) ABLATIVE

(*a.*) ABLATIVE OF SUBSTANTIVES

299. (703.) **noctū,** *by night;* **sponte,** *voluntarily;* **fōrte,** *by chance;* **quotannīs,** *yearly;* **grātiīs** or **grātis,** *for nothing;* **īlicō,** *on the spot* (in **locō**); **forīs,** *out of doors.*

(*b.*) ABLATIVE OF ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

300. (704.) Many adverbs in **-ō** are formed from adjectives of time: as, **perpetuō,** *to the end;* **crēbrō,** *frequently;* **rārō,** *seldom;* **prīmō,** *at first.*

301. (705.) Instead of **-ŏ,** neuter ablatives commonly have **-ē:** as, **longē,** *far;* **doctē,** *wisely.* So also superlatives: **facillimē,** *most easily.* A few ablatives have **-e:** as, **repente,** *suddenly.*

302. (707.) Feminines: many in **-ā;** **ūnā,** *together;* **contrā,** *against;* **extrā,** *outside;* **frūstrā,** *in vain.* So, especially, adverbs denoting the " route by which ": **hāc,** *this way,* **rēctā,** *straightway.*

(3.) LOCATIVE

303 (708 f.) **illī,** commonly **illī-c,** *there* (illo-), **istī,** commonly **istī-c,** *where you are,* **hī-c,** *here;* **sīc,** *so;* **ibĭ,** *there;* **ubĭ,** *where.*

OTHER ENDINGS

304. (710.) Besides the above, other endings are also found in words of this class: as,

-tus: as, **intus,** *from within, within;* **antīquitus,** *from old times, anciently;* **-ter:** **inter,** *between;* denoting manner: **ācriter,** *sharply;* **amanter,** *affectionately;* rarely from **-o-** stems: as, **firmiter,** *steadfastly.*

SENTENCES AS ADVERBS

305. (712.) Some adverbs are condensed sentences: as,

īlicet, *you may go, straightway* (īre licet); **scīlicet,** *you may know, obviously, of course* (scīre licet); **fōrsitan,** *maybe* (fōrs sit an).

———————

(B.) INFLECTION OF THE VERB

306. (713.) The verb is inflected by attaching person endings to the several stems.

THE STEM

307. (714.) The stem contains the meaning of the verb (58), and also denotes the mode (mood) and the time (tense) of the action as viewed by the speaker.

308. (715.) There are three MOODS, *Indicative, Subjunctive,* and *Imperative.*

309. (716.) There are six TENSES in the indicative, three of the present system, *Present, Imperfect,* and *Future;* and three of the perfect system, *Perfect, Pluperfect,* and *Future Perfect.* The subjunctive lacks the futures; the imperative has only the present.

The meanings of the moods and tenses are best learned from reading. No satisfactory translation can be given in the paradigms, especially of the subjunctive, which requires a variety of translations for its various uses.

310. (718–720.) The verb has two principal stems : I. The Present stem, which is the base of the present system ; II. The Perfect stem, which is the base of the perfect active system.

The perfect system has no passive ; its place is supplied by the perfect participle with a form of **sum**, *am,* or less frequently of **fuī**, *am become.*

Some verbs have a present and perfect system made up of two separate roots or stems : as, present indicative **ferō**, *carry,* perfect indicative **tulī**, and perfect participle **lātus** ; present **sum**, *am,* perfect **fuī**.

THE PERSON ENDING

311. (721.) The person ending limits the meaning of the stem by pointing out the person of the subject. There are three PERSONS, the *First*, used of the speaker, the *Second*, of what is spoken to, and the *Third*, of what is spoken of. The person ending furthermore indicates number and voice.

312. (722.) There are two NUMBERS: the *Singular*, used of one, and the *Plural*, used of more than one.

313. (723.) There are two VOICES: the *Active*, indicating that the subject acts, and the *Passive*, indicating that the subject acts on himself, or more commonly is acted on by another.

314. (724.) Only transitive verbs have all persons of the passive. Intransitive verbs have in the passive only the third person singular, used impersonally; the participle in this construction is neuter.

315. (725.) Some verbs have only the passive person endings, but with a reflexive or an active meaning; such are called *Deponents:* see 353.

316. (726.) The person endings are as follows:

Voice	Active				Passive			
Mood	IND. AND SUB.		IMPERATIVE		IND. AND SUB.		IMPERATIVE	
Number	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
First person	-m	-mus	*not used*	*not used*	-r	-mur	*not used*	*not used*
Second person	-s	-tis	*none,* -tō	-te, -tōte	-ris, -re	[-minī]	-re, -tor	[-minī]
Third person	-t	-nt	-tō	-ntō	-tur	-ntur	-tor	-ntor

56

317. (727.) In the perfect indicative active, the second person singular ends in **-tī**, and the third person plural in **-runt** or in **-re**. **-re** is most used in poetry and history; **-runt**, by Cicero, and almost always by Caesar.

318. (728.) In the indicative, **-m** is not used in the present (except in **sum**, *am*, and **inquam**, *quoth I*), in the perfect or future perfect, or in the future in **-bō**.

NOUNS OF THE VERB

319. (732.) The verb is accompanied by some nouns, which are conveniently, though not quite accurately, reckoned parts of the verb; they are:

Three Infinitives, *Present Active* and *Passive*, and *Perfect Active*, sometimes called the *Infinitive Mood*. For the future active and passive and the perfect passive, compound forms are used.

The *Gerund* and the *Gerundive*.

Two *Supines*.

Three Participles, *Present* and *Future Active*, and *Perfect Passive*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

320. (734.) The PRINCIPAL PARTS of a verb are the *Present Indicative Active*, *Present Infinitive Active*, *Perfect Indicative Active*, and *Perfect Participle:* as,

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PART.
regō, *rule*	regere	rēxī	rēctus
laudō, *praise*	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātus
moneō, *advise*	monēre	monuī	monitus
audiō, *hear*	audīre	audīvī	audītus

The Principal Parts of deponents are the *Present Indicative, Present Infinitive*, and *Perfect Participle:* as,

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. PART.
queror, *complain*	querī	questus
mīror, *wonder*	mīrārī	mīrātus
vereor, *fear*	verērī	veritus
partior, *share*	partīrī	partītus

57

321. (737.) For convenience, verbs with -ere in the present infinitive active are called *Verbs in* -ere; those with -āre, -ēre, or -īre, *Verbs in* -āre, -ēre, or -īre, respectively (but see 324). In like manner deponents are designated as *Verbs in* -ī; or *Verbs in* -ārī, -ērī, or -īrī, respectively.

THEME OF THE VERB

322. (738.) The several stems of the verb come from a form called the *Theme.* In primitives, the theme is a root; in denominatives, the theme is a noun stem.

Thus, r e g- in reg-ō is a root; while **vesti-** in **vesti-ō**, *dress*, is a noun stem. The noun stem is sometimes modified in form. Oftentimes the noun stem is only presumed: as, **audi-** in **audi-ō**.

ARRANGEMENT OF THE VERB

323. (741.) Verbs are divided into two classes, according to the form of the present system: I. Root verbs, and verbs in **-ere,** mostly primitive; II. Verbs in **-āre, -ēre,** or -īre, mostly denominative.

324. (742.) Verbs are sometimes arranged without regard to difference of kind, in the alphabetical order of the vowel before **-s** of the second person singular of the present indicative active, **ā, ē, i, ī**: thus, **laudās, monēs, regis, audīs,** sometimes called the *first, second, third,* and *fourth conjugation* respectively.

I. PRIMITIVE VERBS

325. (743.) A few of the oldest and commonest verbs of everyday life have a bare root as stem in the present indicative or in parts of it; and some of them have other peculiarities; such are called *Root Verbs*, or by some, *irregular* (326–340). Most primitives are verbs in **-ere,** like **regō** (341).

ROOT VERBS

sum, *am* (e s-, s-)

326. (745.) **sum,** *am*, is used only in the present system. The perfect system is supplied by forms of **fuī (f u-).**

PRINCIPAL PARTS			
PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PART.
sum	**esse**	**(fuī)**	———

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
sum, *I am*	**sumus,** *we are*
es, *thou art*	**estis,** *you are*
est, *he is*	**sunt,** *they are*

IMPERFECT TENSE

eram, *I was*	**erāmus,** *we were*
erās, *thou wert*	**erātis,** *you were*
erat, *he was*	**erant,** *they were*

FUTURE TENSE

erō, *I shall be*	**erimus,** *we shall be*
eris, *thou wilt be*	**eritis,** *you will be*
erit, *he will be*	**erunt,** *they will be*

PERFECT TENSE

fuī, *I have been,* or *was*	**fuimus,** *we have been,* or *were*
fuistī, *thou hast been,* or *wert*	**fuistis,** *you have been,* or *were*
fuit, *he has been,* or *was*	**fuērunt,** or **-re,** *they have been,* or *were*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

fueram, *I had been*	**fuerāmus,** *we had been*
fuerās, *thou hadst been*	**fuerātis,** *you had been*
fuerat, *he had been*	**fuerant,** *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

fuerō, *I shall have been*	**fuerimus,** *we shall have been*
fueris, *thou wilt have been*	**fueritis,** *you will have been*
fuerit, *he will have been*	**fuerint,** *they will have been*

59

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
sim, *may I be*	**sīmus,** *let us be*
sīs, *mayst thou be*	**sītis,** *be you, may you be*
sit, *let him be, may he be*	**sint,** *let them be, may they be*

IMPERFECT TENSE

essem, *I should be*	**essēmus,** *we should be*
essēs, *thou wouldst be*	**essētis,** *you would be*
esset, *he would be*	**essent,** *they would be*

PERFECT TENSE

fuerim, *I may have been*	**fuerīmus,** *we may have been*
fuerīs, *thou mayst have been*	**fuerītis,** *you may have been*
fuerit, *he may have been*	**fuerint,** *they may have been*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

fuissem, *I should have been*	**fuissēmus,** *we should have been*
fuissēs, *thou wouldst have been*	**fuissētis,** *you would have been*
fuisset, *he would have been*	**fuissent,** *they would have been*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

es or **estō,** *be thou, thou shalt be*	**este** or **estōte,** *be you, you shall be*
estō, *he shall be*	**suntō,** *they shall be*

NOUNS OF THE VERB

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. **esse,** *to be*	*Pres.* ———
Perf. **fuisse,** *to have been*	*Perf.* ———
Fut. **futūrus esse,** *to be going to be*	*Fut.* **futūrus,** *going to be*

327. (750.) The subjunctive imperfect **forem, forēs, foret, forent,** and the infinitive **fore** are sometimes used instead of **essem, essēs, esset, essent,** and **futūrus esse.**

328. (751.)   **possum,** *can.*

		INDICATIVE MOOD	
		Singular	Plural
Pres.		**possum, potes, potest**	**possumus, potestis, possunt**
Imp.		**poteram, poterās, poterat**	**poterāmus, poterātis, poterant**
Fut.		**poterō, poteris, poterit**	**poterimus, poteritis, poterunt**
		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
Pres.		**possim, possīs, possit**	**possīmus, possītis, possint**
Imp.		**possem, possēs, posset**	**possēmus, possētis, possent**
		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres.		**posse**	————

Principal parts : **possum, posse ; (potuī, ———)**

329. (752 f.) **possum** is formed from **potis** or **pote,** *able,* and **sum.** The perfect **potuī,** from an obsolete **potēre,** is conjugated like **fuī** (326).

dō, *give* (d a-)

330. (754.) The present system of **dō** is as follows:

Principal parts : **dō, dare, dedī, datus**

		ACTIVE VOICE	
		INDICATIVE MOOD	
		Singular	Plural
Pres.		**dō, dās, dat**	**damus, datis, dant**
Imp.		**dabam, dabās, dabat**	**dabāmus, dabātis, dabant**
Fut.		**dabō, dabis, dabit**	**dabimus, dabitis, dabunt**
		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
Pres.		**dem, dēs, det**	**dēmus, dētis, dent**
Imp.		**darem, darēs, daret**	**darēmus, darētis, darent**
		IMPERATIVE MOOD	
		dā or **datō, datō**	**date** or **datōte, dantō**
		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres.		**dare**	**dāns**
		GERUND	
Gen.		**dandī,** etc.	

	PASSIVE VOICE	
	INDICATIVE MOOD	
	Singular	Plural
Pres.	——, daris or -re, datur	damur, daminī, dantur
Imp.	dabar, dabāre or -ris, da-bātur	dabāmur, dabāminī, dabantur
Fut.	dabor, dabere or -ris, da-bitur	dabimur, dabiminī, dabuntur
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
Pres.	——, dēre or -ris, dētur	——, dēminī, dentur
Imp.	darer, darēre or -ris, darē-tur	darēmur, darēmini, darentur
	IMPERATIVE MOOD	
	dare or dator, dator	daminī, dantor
	INFINITIVE	GERUNDIVE
Pres.	darī	dandus

inquam, *say I, quoth I*

331. (760.) inquam, *say I,* is chiefly used in quoting a person's direct words; and, from its meaning, is naturally very defective. The only parts in common use are the following:

	INDICATIVE MOOD	
	Singular	Plural
Pres.	inquam, inquis, inquit	——, ——, inquiunt
Fut.	——, inquiēs, inquiet	——, ——, ——

332. (762.)   eō, *go* (ī- for e i-, i-)

Principal parts: eō, īre, iī, itum	
	INDICATIVE MOOD
	Singular Plural

	Singular	Plural
Pres.	eō, īs, it	īmus, ītis, eunt
Imp.	ībam, ībās, ībat	ībāmus, ībātis, ībant
Fut.	ībō, ībis, ībit	ībimus, ībitis, ībunt
Perf.	iī, īstī, iīt or īt	iimus, īstis, iērunt or -re
Plup.	ieram, ierās, ierat	ierāmus, ierātis, ierant
F. P.	ierō, ieris, ierit	ierimus, ieritis, ierint

	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
Pres.	eam, eās, eat	eāmus, eātis, eant
Imp.	īrem, īrēs, īret	īrēmus, īrētis, īrent
Perf.	ierim, ierīs, ierit	ierīmus, ierītis, ierint
Plup.	īssem, īssēs, īsset	īssēmus, īssētis, īssent
	IMPERATIVE MOOD	
	ī or ītō, ītŏ	īte or ītōte, euntō

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres.	īre	iēns, *Gen.* euntis
Perf.	īsse	itum
Fut.	itūrus esse	itūrus
	GERUND	SUPINE
Gen.	eundī	
Dat.	eundō	
Acc.	eundum	———
Abl.	eundō	———

333. (763 f.) The passive is only used impersonally, and has a neuter gerundive **eundum** and participle **itum**; but transitive compounds, as **adeō,** *go up to,* have a complete passive: as, **adeor, adīris,** etc.

A few examples are found of a perfect system with **v,** as **īvī,** etc. This form is confined almost exclusively to poetry and late prose.

Compounds often have a double i in the second persons of the perfect indicative, in the pluperfect subjunctive throughout, and in the perfect infinitive: as, **abiistī, abiissem, abiisse.**

queō, *can*

334. (768.) **queō,** *can,* and **nequeō,** *can't,* have the perfect **quīvī,** the rest like **eō** (332); but they have no imperative, gerundive, or future participle, and the present participle is rare. **queō** is commonly used with a negative, and some parts only so. Passive forms are rare.

edō, *eat* (e d-, ē d-)

335. (769.) **edō,** *eat,* has a present system with a formative vowel like **regō** throughout (341); but in some parts of the present, and of the imperfect subjunctive, parallel root forms occur, with **d** of the root changed to **s,** and the vowel lengthened, as may be seen in the following:

63

Principal parts : **edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsus**	
	INDICATIVE MOOD

	Singular	Plural
Pres.	**edō, ēs** or **edis, ēst** or **edit**	**edimus, ēstis** or **editis, edunt**

	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
Pres.	**edim, edīs, edit**	———, ———, **edint**
	or **edam, edās, edat**	or **edāmus, edātis, edant**
Imp.	———, **ēssēs, ēsset**	**ēssēmus,** ———, **ēssent**
	or **ederem, ederēs, ederet**	or **ederēmus, ederētis, ederent**

	IMPERATIVE MOOD	
	ēs or **ede, ēstō** or **editō**	**ēste** or **edite**

	INFINITIVE	**PARTICIPLE**
Pres.	**ēsse**	**edēns**

336. (770.) In the passive, the indicative present **ēstur** is used, and imperfect subjunctive **ēssētur**.

337. (773.) **volō,** *will, wish, want, am willing* (**vol-, vel-**).

Principal parts : **volō, velle, voluī,** ———	
	INDICATIVE MOOD

	Singular	Plural
Pres.	**volō, vīs, volt** or **vult**	**volumus, voltis** or **vultis, volunt**
Imp.	**volēbam, volēbās, volēbat**	**volēbāmus, volēbātis, volēbant**
Fut.	**volam, volēs, volet**	**volēmus, volētis, volent**
Perf.	**voluī, voluistī, voluit**	**voluimus, voluistis, voluērunt** or **-re**
Plup.	**volueram, voluerās, voluerat**	**voluerāmus, voluerātis, voluerant**
F. P.	**voluerō, volueris, voluerit**	**voluerimus, volueritis, voluerint**

	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
Pres.	**velim, velīs, velit**	**velīmus, velītis, velint**
Imp.	**vellem, vellēs, vellet**	**vellēmus, vellētis, vellent**
Perf.	**voluerim, voluerīs, voluerit**	**voluerīmus, voluerītis, voluerint**
Plup.	**voluissem, voluissēs, voluisset**	**voluissēmus, voluissētis, voluissent**

	INFINITIVE	**PARTICIPLE**
Pres.	**velle**	**volēns**
Perf.	**voluisse**	

338. (776.) **nōlō,** *won't, don't want, object, am not willing.*

Principal parts: **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——**	
INDICATIVE MOOD	
Singular	Plural
Pres. **nōlō, nōn vīs, nōn volt** or **vult**	**nōlumus, nōn voltis** or **vultis, nōlunt**
Imp. **nōlēbam, nōlēbās, nōlēbat**	**nōlēbāmus, nōlēbātis, nōlēbant**
Fut. **——, nōlēs, nōlet**	**nōlēmus, nōlētis, nōlent**
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
Pres. **nōlim, nōlīs, nōlit**	**nōlīmus, nōlītis, nōlint**
Imp. **nōllem, nōllēs, nōllet**	**nōllēmus, nōllētis, nōllent**
IMPERATIVE MOOD	
nōlī or **nōlītō, nōlītō**	**nōlīte** or **nōlītōte, nōluntō**
INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. **nōlle**	——

339. (778.) **mālō,** *like better, choose rather.*

Principal parts: **mālō, mālle, māluī, ——**	
INDICATIVE MOOD	
Singular	Plural
Pres. **mālō, māvīs, māvolt** or **māvult**	**mālumus, māvoltis** or **māvultis, mālunt**
Imp. **mālēbam, mālēbās, mālēbat**	**mālēbāmus, mālēbātis, mālēbant**
Fut. **——, mālēs, mālet**	**mālēmus, mālētís, mālent**
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
Pres. **mālim, mālīs, mālit**	**mālīmus, mālītis, mālint**
Imp. **māllem, māllēs, māllet**	**māllēmus, māllētis, māllent**
INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. **mālle**	——

ferō, *carry* (**fe r-**)

340. (780.) **ferō,** *carry,* is used only in the present system

E   65

(310). The other parts are supplied by forms of **tollō,** *lift* (**t o l-, t l ā-**). The present system of **ferō** is as follows:

Principal parts: **ferō, ferre; (tulī, lātus)**

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

	Singular	Plural
Pres.	**ferō, fers, fert**	**ferimus, fertis, ferunt**
Imp.	**ferēbam, ferēbās, ferēbat**	**.erebāmus, ferēbātis, ferēbant**
Fut.	**feram, ferēs, feret**	**ferēmus, ferētis, ferent**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Pres.	**feram, ferās, ferat**	**ferāmus, ferātis, ferant**
Imp.	**ferrem, ferrēs, ferret**	**ferrēmus, ferrētis, ferrent**

IMPERATIVE MOOD

	fer or **fertō, fertō**	**ferte** or **fertōte, feruntō**

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres.	**ferre**	**ferēns**
	GERUND	
Gen.	**ferendī,** etc.	

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

	Singular	Plural
Pres.	**feror, ferris** or **-re, fertur**	**ferimur, feriminī, feruntur**
Imp.	**ferēbar, ferēbāre** or **-ris, ferēbātur**	**ferēbāmur, ferēbāminī, ferēbantur**
Fut.	**ferar, ferēre** or **-ris, ferētur**	**ferēmur, ferēminī, ferentur**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Pres.	**ferar, ferāre** or **-ris, ferātur**	**ferāmur, ferāminī, ferantur**
Imp.	**ferrer, ferrēre** or **-ris, ferrē-tur**	**ferrēmur, ferrēminī, ferrentur**

IMPERATIVE MOOD

	ferre or **fertor, fertor**	**feriminī, feruntor**

	INFINITIVE	GERUNDIVE
Pres.	**ferrī**	**ferendus**

VERBS IN -ere

THE THIRD CONJUGATION

341. (782.)   **regō,** *rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS			
PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PART.
regō	**regere**	**rēxī**	**rēctus**

ACTIVE VOICE
INDICATIVE MOOD
PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
regō, *I rule,* or *am ruling*	**regimus,** *we rule,* or *are ruling*
regis, *thou rulest,* or *art ruling*	**regitis,** *you rule,* or *are ruling*
regit, *he rules,* or *is ruling*	**regunt,** *they rule,* or *are ruling*

IMPERFECT TENSE

regēbam, *I was ruling,* or *I ruled*	**regēbāmus,** *we were ruling,* or *we ruled*
regēbās, *thou wert ruling,* or *thou r1/edst*	**regēbātis,** *you were ruling,* or *you ruled*
regēbat, *he was ruling,* or *he ruled*	**regēbant,** *they were ruling,* or *they ruled*

FUTURE TENSE

regam, *I shall rule*	**regēmus,** *we shall rule*
regēs, *thou wilt rule*	**regētis,** *you will rule*
reget, *he will rule*	**regent,** *they will rule*

PERFECT TENSE

rēxī, *I have ruled,* or *I ruled*	**rēximus,** *we have ruled,* or *we ruled*
rēxistī, *thou hast ruled,* or *thou ruledst*	**rēxistis,** *you have ruled,* or *you ruled*
rēxit, *he has ruled,* or *he ruled*	**rēxērunt** or **-re,** *they have ruled,* or *they ruled*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

rēxeram, *I had ruled*	**rēxerāmus,** *we had ruled*
rēxerās, *thou hadst ruled*	**rēxerātis,** *you had ruled*
rēxerat, *he had ruled*	**rēxerant,** *they had ruled*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

rēxerō, *I shall have ruled*	**rēxerimus,** *we shall have ruled*
rēxeris, *thou wilt have ruled*	**rēxeritis,** *you will have ruled*
rēxerit, *he will have ruled*	**rēxerint,** *they will have ruled*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
regam, *may I rule*	**regāmus,** *let us rule*
regās, *mayst thou rule*	**regātis,** *may you rule*
regat, *let him rule*	**regant,** *let them rule*

IMPERFECT TENSE

regerem, *I should rule*	**regerēmus,** *we should rule*
regerēs, *thou wouldst rule*	**regerētis,** *you would rule*
regeret, *he would rule*	**regerent,** *they would rule*

PERFECT TENSE

rēxerim, *I may have ruled*	**rēxerĭmus,** *we may have ruled*
rēxerīs, *thou mayst have ruled*	**rēxerītis,** *you may have ruled*
rēxerit, *he may have ruled*	**rēxerint,** *they may have ruled*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

rēxissem, *I should have ruled*	**rēxissēmus,** *we should have ruled*
rēxissēs, *thou wouldst have ruled*	**rēxissētis,** *you would have ruled*
rēxisset, *he would have ruled*	**rēxissent,** *they would have ruled*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

rege or **regitō,** *rule, thou shalt rule*	**regite** or **regitōte,** *rule, you shall rule*
regitō, *he shall rule*	**reguntō,** *they shall rule*

NOUNS OF THE VERB

INFINITIVE

Pres.   **regere,** *to rule*
Perf.   **rēxisse,** *to have ruled*
Fut.   **rēctūrus esse,** *to be going to rule*

PARTICIPLE

Pres.   **regēns,** *ruling*

Fut.   **rēctūrus,** *going to rule*

GERUND

Gen.   **regendī,** *of ruling*
Dat.   **regendō,** *for ruling*
Acc.   **regendum,** *ruling*
Abl.   **regendō,** *by ruling*

SUPINE

Acc.   ***rēctum,** to rule*, not used
Abl.   ***rēctū,** in ruling*, not used

VERBS IN -ere

THE THIRD CONJUGATION

342. (783.)   **regor,** *am ruled*

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
regor, *I am ruled*	**regimur,** *we are ruled*
regeris or **-re,** *thou art ruled*	**regiminī,** *you are ruled*
regitur, *he is ruled*	**reguntur,** *they are ruled*

IMPERFECT TENSE

regēbar, *I was ruled*	**regēbāmur,** *we were ruled*
regēbāre or **-ris,** *thou wert ruled*	**regēbāminī,** *you were ruled*
regēbātur, *he was ruled*	**regēbantur,** *they were ruled*

FUTURE TENSE

regar, *I shall be ruled*	**regēmur,** *we shall be ruled*
regēre or **-ris,** *thou wilt be ruled*	**regēminī,** *you will be ruled*
regētur, *he will be ruled*	**regentur,** *they will be ruled*

PERFECT TENSE

rēctus sum, *I have been,* or *was ruled*	**rēctī sumus,** *we have been,* or *were ruled*
rēctus es, *thou hast been,* or *wert ruled*	**rēctī estis,** *you have been,* or *were ruled*
rēctus est, *he has been,* or *was ruled*	**rēctī sunt,** *they have been,* or *were ruled*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

rēctus eram, *I had been ruled*	**rēctī erāmus,** *we had been ruled*
rēctus erās, *thou hadst been ruled*	**rēctī erātis,** *you had been ruled*
rēctus erat, *he had been ruled*	**rēctī erant,** *they had been ruled*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

rēctus erō, *I shall have been ruled*	**rēctī erimus,** *we shall have been ruled*
rēctus eris, *thou wilt have been ruled*	**rēctī eritis,** *you will have been ruled*
rēctus erit, *he will have been ruled*	**rēctī erunt,** *they will have been ruled*

69

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
regar, *may I be ruled*	**regāmur,** *may we be ruled*
regāre or **-ris,** *mayst thou be ruled*	**regāminī,** *may you be ruled*
regātur, *let him be ruled*	**regantur,** *let them be ruled*

IMPERFECT TENSE

regerer, *I should be ruled*	**regerēmur,** *we should be ruled*
regerēre or **-ris,** *thou wouldst be ruled*	**regerēminī,** *you would be ruled*
regerētur, *he would be ruled*	**regerentur,** *they would be ruled*

PERFECT TENSE

rēctus sim, *I may have been ruled*	**rēctī sīmus,** *we may have been ruled*
rēctus sīs, *thou mayst have been ruled*	**rēctī sītis,** *you may have been ruled*
rēctus sit, *he may have been ruled*	**rēctī sint,** *they may have been ruled*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

rēctus essem, *I should have been ruled*	**rēctī essēmus,** *we should have been ruled*
rēctus essēs, *thou wouldst have been ruled*	**rēctī essētis,** *you would have been ruled*
rēctus esset, *he would have been ruled*	**rēctī essent,** *they would have been ruled*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

regere or **regitor,** *be ruled, thou shalt be ruled*	**regiminī,** *be ruled*
regitor, *he shall be ruled*	**reguntor,** *they shall be ruled*

NOUNS OF THE VERB

INFINITIVE

Pres. **regī,** *to be ruled*
Perf. **rēctus esse,** *to have been ruled*
Fut. ***rēctum īrī,** *to be going to be ruled*, not used

GERUNDIVE

regendus, *to be ruled*

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

rēctus, *ruled*

VERBS IN -iŏ, -ere

343. (784.) Verbs in **-iŏ, -ere,** as **capiō, capere,** *take* (c a p-), drop an i in some forms of the present and imperfect.   The present system is as follows:

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">ACTIVE VOICE</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">INDICATIVE MOOD</td></tr>
<tr><td align="center">Singular</td><td align="center">Plural</td></tr>
<tr><td>*Pres.*   capiō, capis, capit</td><td>capimus, capitis, capiunt</td></tr>
<tr><td>*Imp.*   capiēbam, capiēbās, capiēbat</td><td>capiēbāmus, capiēbātis, capiēbant</td></tr>
<tr><td>*Fut.*   capiam, capiēs, capiet</td><td>capiēmus, capiētis, capient</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD</td></tr>
<tr><td>*Pres.*   capiam, capiās, capiat</td><td>capiāmus, capiātis, capiant</td></tr>
<tr><td>*Imp.*   caperem, caperēs, caperet</td><td>caperēmus, caperētis, caperent</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">IMPERATIVE MOOD</td></tr>
<tr><td>cape or capitō, capitō</td><td>capite or capitōte, capiuntō</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><td align="center">INFINITIVE</td><td align="center">PARTICIPLE</td></tr>
<tr><td>*Pres.*   capere</td><td>capiēns</td></tr>
<tr><td align="center">GERUND</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>*Gen.*   capiendī, etc.</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">PASSIVE VOICE</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">INDICATIVE MOOD</td></tr>
<tr><td align="center">Singular.</td><td align="center">Plural</td></tr>
<tr><td>*Pres.*   capior, caperis or -re, capitur</td><td>capimur, capiminī, capiuntur</td></tr>
<tr><td>*Imp.*   capiēbar, capiēbāre or -ris, capiēbātur</td><td>capiēbāmur, capiēbāminī, capiēbantur</td></tr>
<tr><td>*Fut.*   capiar, capiēre or -ris, capiētur</td><td>capiēmur, capiēminī, capientur</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD</td></tr>
<tr><td>*Pres.*   capiar, capiāre or -ris, capiātur</td><td>capiāmur, capiāminī, capiantur</td></tr>
<tr><td>*Imp.*   caperer, caperēre or -ris, caperētur</td><td>caperēmur, caperēminī, caperentur</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">IMPERATIVE MOOD</td></tr>
<tr><td>capere or capitor, capitor</td><td>capiminī, capiuntor</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><td align="center">INFINITIVE</td><td align="center">GERUNDIVE</td></tr>
<tr><td>*Pres.*   capī</td><td>capiendus</td></tr>
</table>

344. (785.) There are a dozen verbs in -iō, -ere, like **capiō**, and three deponents in -ior, -ī. **ăiō**, *say*, and **fīō**, *grow, become*, have certain peculiarities.

ăiō, *say, say ay, avouch* (**a g**-).

345. (786.) **ăiō**, *say*, is defective, and has only these parts in common use:

	Singular	Plural
Ind. Pres.	ăiō, ais, ait	——, ——, ăiunt
Ind. Imp.	ăiēbam, ăiēbās, ăiēbat	ăiēbāmus, ăiēbātis, ăiēbant
Subj. Pres.	——, ăiās, ăiat	——, ——,

fīō, *become, am made.*

346. (788.) **fīō**, *become*, and **factus sum**, supplement each other: in the present system, the passive of **faciō**, *make*, except the gerundive, **faciendus**, is not used, **fīō**, etc., taking its place; in the perfect system, only **factus sum**, etc., is used.

	Singular	Plural
Ind. Pres.	fīō, fīs, fit	——, ——, fīunt
Ind. Imp.	fīēbam, fīēbās, fīēbat	fīēbāmus, fīēbātis, fīēbant
Ind. Fut.	fīam, fīēs, fīet	fīēmus, fīētis, fīent
Subj. Pres.	fīam, fīās, fīat	fīāmus, fīātis, fīant
Subj. Imp.	fierem, fierēs, fieret	fierēmus, fierētis, fierent
Imper.	fī	fīte
Infin. Pres.	fierī	*Part. Pres.* ——

II. Denominative Verbs
VERBS IN -āre
THE FIRST CONJUGATION
347. (792.)   **laudō,** *praise*

PRINCIPAL PARTS			
Pres. Indic.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Part.
laudō	**laudāre**	**laudāvī**	**laudātus**

ACTIVE VOICE
INDICATIVE MOOD
PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
laudō, *I praise,* or *am praising*	**laudāmus,** *we praise,* or *are praising*
laudās, *thou praisest,* or *art praising*	**laudātis,** *you praise,* or *are praising*
laudat, *he praises,* or *is praising*	**laudant,** *they praise,* or *are praising*

IMPERFECT TENSE

laudābam, *I was praising,* or *I praised*	**laudābāmus,** *we were praising,* or *we praised*
laudābās, *thou wert praising,* or *thou praisedst*	**laudābātis,** *you were praising,* or *you praised*
laudābat, *he was praising,* or *he praised*	**laudābant,** *they were praising,* or *they praised*

FUTURE TENSE

laudābō, *I shall praise*	**laudābimus,** *we shall praise*
laudābis, *thou wilt praise*	**laudābitis,** *you will praise*
laudābit, *he will praise*	**laudābunt,** *they will praise*

PERFECT TENSE

laudāvī, *I have praised,* or *I praised*	**laudāvimus,** *we have praised,* or *we praised*
laudāvistī, *thou hast praised,* or *thou praisedst*	**laudāvistis,** *you have praised,* or *you praised*
laudāvit, *he has praised,* or *he praised*	**laudāvērunt** or **-re,** *they have praised,* or *they praised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

laudāveram, *I had praised*	**laudāverāmus,** *we had praised*
laudāverās, *thou hadst praised*	**laudāverātis,** *you had praised*
laudāverat, *he had praised*	**laudāverant,** *they had praised*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

laudāverō, *I shall have praised*	**laudāverimus,** *we shall have praised*
laudāveris, *thou wilt have praised*	**laudāveritis,** *you will have praised*
laudāverit, *he will have praised*	**laudāverint,** *they will have praised*

73

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
laudem, *may I praise*	**laudēmus,** *let us praise*
laudēs, *mayst thou praise*	**laudētis,** *may you praise*
laudet, *let him praise*	**laudent,** *let them praise*

IMPERFECT TENSE

laudārem, *I should praise*	**laudārēmus,** *we should praise*
laudārēs, *thou wouldst praise*	**laudārētis,** *you would praise*
laudāret, *he would praise*	**laudārent,** *they would praise*

PERFECT TENSE

laudāverim, *I may have praised*	**laudāverīmus,** *we may have praised*
laudāverīs, *thou mayst have praised*	**laudāverītis,** *you may have praised*
laudāverit, *he may have praised*	**laudāverint,** *they may have praised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

laudāvissem, *I should have praised*	**laudāvissēmus,** *we should have praised*
laudāvissēs, *thou wouldst have praised*	**laudāvissētis,** *you would have praised*
laudāvisset, *he would have praised*	**laudāvissent,** *they would have praised*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

laudā or **laudātō,** *praise, thou shalt praise*	**laudāte** or **laudātōte,** *praise, you shall praise*
laudātō, *he shall praise*	**laudantō,** *they shall praise*

NOUNS OF THE VERB

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. **laudāre,** *to praise*	*Pres.* **laudāns,** *praising*
Perf. **laudāvisse,** *to have praised*	
Fut. **laudātūrus esse,** *to be going to praise*	*Fut.* **laudātūrus,** *going to praise*

GERUND	SUPINE
Gen. **laudandī,** *of praising*	
Dat. **laudandō,** *for praising*	
Acc. **laudandum,** *praising*	*Acc.* **laudātum,** *to praise*
Abl. **laudandō,** *by praising*	*Abl.* ***laudātū,** *in praising*, not used

VERBS IN -āre

THE FIRST CONJUGATION

348. (793.)   **laudor,** *am praised*

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
laudor, *I am praised*	**laudāmur,** *we are praised*
laudāris or **-re,** *thou art praised*	**laudāminī,** *you are praised*
laudātur, *he is praised*	**laudantur,** *they are praised*

IMPERFECT TENSE

laudābar, *I was praised*	**laudābāmur,** *we were praised*
laudābāre or **-ris,** *thou wert praised*	**laudābāminī,** *you were praised*
laudābātur, *he was praised*	**laudābantur,** *they were praised*

FUTURE TENSE

laudābor, *I shall be praised*	**laudābimur,** *we shall be praised*
laudābere or **-ris,** *thou wilt be praised*	**laudābiminī,** *you will be praised*
laudābitur, *he will be praised*	**laudābuntur,** *they will be praised*

PERFECT TENSE

laudātus sum, *I have been,* or *was praised*	**laudātī sumus,** *we have been,* or *were praised*
laudātus es, *thou hast been,* or *wert praised*	**laudātī estis,** *you have been,* or *were praised*
laudātus est, *he has been,* or *was praised*	**laudātī sunt,** *they have been,* or *were praised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

laudātus eram, *I had been praised*	**laudātī erāmus,** *we had been praised*
laudātus erās, *thou hadst been praised*	**laudātī erātis,** *you had been praised*
laudātus erat, *he had been praised*	**laudātī erant,** *they had been praised*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

laudātus erō, *I shall have been praised*	**laudātī erimus,** *we shall have been praised*
laudātus eris, *thou wilt have been praised*	**laudātī eritis,** *you will have been praised*
laudātus erit, *he will have been praised*	**laudātī erunt,** *they will have been praised*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD
PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
lauder, *may I be praised*	**laudēmur**, *may we be praised*
laudēre or **-ris**, *mayst thou be praised*	**laudēminī**, *may you be praised*
laudētur, *let him be praised*	**laudentur**, *let them be praised*

IMPERFECT TENSE

laudārer, *I should be praised*	**laudārēmur**, *we should be praised*
laudārēre or **-ris**, *thou wouldst be praised*	**laudārēminī**, *you would be praised*
laudārētur, *he would be praised*	**laudārentur**, *they would be praised*

PERFECT TENSE

laudātus sim, *I may have been praised*	**laudātī sīmus**, *we may have been praised*
laudātus sīs, *thou mayst have been praised*	**laudātī sītis**, *you may have been praised*
laudātus sit, *he may have been praised*	**laudātī sint**, *they may have been praised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

laudātus essem, *I should have been praised*	**laudātī essēmus**, *we should have been praised*
laudātus essēs, *thou wouldst have been praised*	**laudātī essētis**, *you would have been praised*
laudātus esset, *he would have been praised*	**laudātī essent**, *they would have been praised*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

laudāre or **laudātor**, *be praised, thou shalt be praised*	**laudāminī**, *be praised*
laudātor, *he shall be praised*	**laudantor**, *they shall be praised*

NOUNS OF THE VERB

INFINITIVE	GERUNDIVE
Pres. **laudārī**, *to be praised*	**laudandus**, *to be praised*
Perf. **laudātus esse**, *to have been praised*	
	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
Fut. ***laudātum īrī**, *to be going to be praised*, not used	**laudātus**, *praised*

VERBS IN -ēre

THE SECOND CONJUGATION

349. (794.)   **moneō,** *advise*

<table>
<tr><td colspan="4" align="center">PRINCIPAL PARTS</td></tr>
<tr><td>PRES. INDIC.</td><td>PRES. INFIN.</td><td>PERF. INDIC.</td><td>PERF. PART.</td></tr>
<tr><td>moneō</td><td>monēre</td><td>monuī</td><td>monitus</td></tr>
</table>

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
moneō, *I advise,* or *am advising*	**monēmus,** *we advise,* or *are advising*
monēs, *thou advisest,* or *art advising*	**monētis,** *you advise,* or *are advising*
monet, *he advises,* or *is advising*	**monent,** *they advise,* or *are advising*

IMPERFECT TENSE

monēbam, *I was advising,* or *I advised*	**monēbāmus,** *we were advising,* or *we advised*
monēbās, *thou wert advising,* or *thou advisedst*	**monēbātis,** *you were advising,* or *you advised*
monēbat, *he was advising,* or *he advised*	**monēbant,** *they were advising,* or *they advised*

FUTURE TENSE

monēbō, *I shall advise*	**monēbimus,** *we shall advise*
monēbis, *thou wilt advise*	**monēbitis,** *you will advise*
monēbit, *he will advise*	**monēbunt,** *they will advise*

PERFECT TENSE

monuī, *I have advised,* or *I advised*	**monuimus,** *we have advised,* or *we advised*
monuistī, *thou hast advised,* or *thou advisedst*	**monuistis,** *you have advised,* or *you advised*
monuit, *he has advised,* or *he advised*	**monuērunt** or **-re,** *they have advised,* or *they advised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

monueram, *I had advised*	**monuerāmus,** *we had advised*
monuerās, *thou hadst advised*	**monuerātis,** *you had advised*
monuerat, *he had advised*	**monuerant,** *they had advised*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

monuerō, *I shall have advised*	**monuerimus,** *we shall have advised*
monueris, *thou wilt have advised*	**monueritis,** *you will have advised*
monuerit, *he will have advised*	**monuerint,** *they will have advised*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
moneam, *may I advise*	**moneāmus,** *let us advise*
moneās, *mayst thou advise*	**moneātis,** *may you advise*
moneat, *let him advise*	**moneant,** *let them advise*

IMPERFECT TENSE

monērem, *I should advise*	**monērēmus,** *we should advise*
monērēs, *thou wouldst advise*	**monērētis,** *you would advise*
monēret, *he would advise*	**monērent,** *they would advise*

PERFECT TENSE

monuerim, *I may have advised*	**monuerīmus,** *we may have advised*
monuerīs, *thou mayst have advised*	**monuerītis,** *you may have advised*
monuerit, *he may have advised*	**monuerint,** *they may have advised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

monuissem, *I should have advised*	**monuissēmus,** *we should have advised*
monuissēs, *thou wouldst have advised*	**monuissētis,** *you would have advised*
monuisset, *he would have advised*	**monuissent,** *they would have advised*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

monē or **monētō,** *advise, thou shalt advise*	**monēte** or **monētōte,** *advise, you shall advise*
monētō, *he shall advise*	**monentō,** *they shall advise*

NOUNS OF THE VERB

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. **monēre,** *to advise*	*Pres.* **monēns,** *advising*
Perf. **monuisse,** *to have advised*	
Fut. **monitūrus esse,** *to be going to advise*	*Fut.* **monitūrus,** *going to advise*

GERUND	SUPINE
Gen. **monendī,** *of advising*	
Dat. **monendō,** *for advising*	
Acc. **monendum,** *advising*	*Acc.* *****monitum,** *to advise*, not used
Abl. **monendō,** *by advising*	*Abl.* **monitū,** *in advising*

78

VERBS IN -ēre

THE SECOND CONJUGATION

350. (795.)   moneor, *am advised*

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
moneor, *I am advised*	**monēmur,** *we are advised*
monēris or **-re,** *thou art advised*	**monēminī,** *you are advised*
monētur, *he is advised*	**monentur,** *they are advised*

IMPERFECT TENSE

monēbar, *I was advised*	**monēbāmur,** *we were advised*
monēbāre or **-ris,** *thou wert advised*	**monēbāminī,** *you were advised*
monēbātur, *he was advised*	**monēbantur,** *they were advised*

FUTURE TENSE

monēbor, *I shall be advised*	**monēbimur,** *we shall be advised*
monēbere or **-ris,** *thou wilt be advised*	**monēbiminī,** *you will be advised*
monēbitur, *he will be advised*	**monēbuntur,** *they will be advised*

PERFECT TENSE

monitus sum, *I have been,* or *was advised*	**monitī sumus,** *we have been,* or *were advised*
monitus es, *thou hast been,* or *wert advised*	**monitī estis,** *you have been,* or *were advised*
monitus est, *he has been,* or *was advised*	**monitī sunt,** *they have been,* or *were advised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

monitus eram, *I had been advised*	**monitī erāmus,** *we had been advised*
monitus erās, *thou hadst been advised*	**monitī erātis,** *you had been advised*
monitus erat, *he had been advised*	**monitī erant,** *they had been advised*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

monitus erō, *I shall have been advised*	**monitī erimus,** *we shall have been advised*
monitus eris, *thou wilt have been advised*	**monitī eritis,** *you will have been advised*
monitus erit, *he will have been advised*	**monitī erunt,** *they will have been advised*

79

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
monear, *may I be advised*	**moneāmur**, *may we be advised*
moneāre or **-ris**, *mayst thou be advised*	**moneāminī**, *may you be advised*
moneātur, *let him be advised*	**moneantur**, *let them be advised*

IMPERFECT TENSE

monērer, *I should be advised*	**monērēmur**, *we should be advised*
monērēre or **-ris**, *thou wouldst be advised*	**monērēminī**, *you would be advised*
monērētur, *he would be advised*	**monērentur**, *they would be advised*

PERFECT TENSE

monitus sim, *I may have been advised*	**monitī sīmus**, *we may have been advised*
monitus sīs, *thou mayst have been advised*	**monitī sītis**, *you may have been advised*
monitus sit, *he may have been advised*	**monitī sint**, *they may have been advised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

monitus essem, *I should have been advised*	**monitī essēmus**, *we should have been advised*
monitus essēs, *thou wouldst have been advised*	**monitī essētis**, *you would have been advised*
monitus esset, *he would have been advised*	**monitī essent**, *they would have been advised*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

monēre or **monētor**, *be advised, thou shalt be advised*	**monēminī**, *be advised*
monētor, *he shall be advised*	**monentor**, *they shall be advised*

NOUNS OF THE VERB

INFINITIVE	GERUNDIVE
Pres. **monērī**, *to be advised*	**monendus**, *to be advised*
Perf. **monitus esse**, *to have been advised*	
	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
Fut. *****monitum īrī**, *to be going to be advised*, not used	**monitus**, *advised*

VERBS IN -īre
THE FOURTH CONJUGATION
351. (796.)   **audiō,** *hear*

PRINCIPAL PARTS			
PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PART.
audiō	**audīre**	**audīvī**	**audītus**

ACTIVE VOICE
INDICATIVE MOOD
PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
audiō, *I hear,* or *am hearing*	**audīmus,** *we hear,* or *are hearing*
audīs, *thou hearest,* or *art hearing*	**audītis,** *you hear,* or *are hearing*
audit, *he hears,* or *is hearing*	**audiunt,** *they hear,* or *are hearing*

IMPERFECT TENSE

audiēbam, *I was hearing,* or *I heard*	**audiēbāmus,** *we were hearing,* or *we heard*
audiēbās, *thou wert hearing,* or *thou heardst*	**audiēbātis,** *you were hearing,* or *you heard*
audiēbat, *he was hearing,* or *he heard*	**audiēbant,** *they were hearing,* or *they heard*

FUTURE TENSE

audiam, *I shall hear*	**audiēmus,** *we shall hear*
audiēs, *thou wilt hear*	**audiētis,** *you will hear*
audiet, *he will hear*	**audient,** *they will hear*

PERFECT TENSE

audīvī, *I have heard,* or *I heard*	**audīvimus,** *we have heard,* or *we heard*
audīvistī, *thou hast heard,* or *thou heardst*	**audīvistis,** *you have heard,* or *you heard*
audīvit, *he has heard,* or *he heard*	**audīvērunt** or **-re,** *they have heard,* or *they heard*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

audīveram, *I had heard*	**audīverāmus,** *we had heard*
audīverās, *thou hadst heard*	**audīverātis,** *you had heard*
audīverat, *he had heard*	**audīverant,** *they had heard*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

audīverō, *I shall have heard*	**audīverimus,** *we shall have heard*
audīveris, *thou wilt have heard*	**audīveritis,** *you will have heard*
audīverit, *he will have heard*	**audīverint,** *they will have heard*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
audiam, *may I hear*	**audiāmus,** *let us hear*
audiās, *mayst thou hear*	**audiātis,** *may you hear*
audiat, *let him hear*	**audiant,** *let them hear*

IMPERFECT TENSE

audīrem, *I should hear*	**audīrēmus,** *we should hear*
audīrēs, *thou wouldst hear*	**audīrētis,** *you would hear*
audīret, *he would hear*	**audīrent,** *they would hear*

PERFECT TENSE

audīverim, *I may have heard*	**audīverīmus,** *we may have heard*
audīverīs, *thou mayst have heard*	**audīverītis,** *you may have heard*
audīverit, *he may have heard*	**audīverint,** *they may have heard*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

audīvissem, *I should have heard*	**audīvissēmus,** *we should have heard*
audīvissēs, *thou wouldst have heard*	**audīvissētis,** *you would have heard*
audīvisset, *he would have heard*	**audīvissent,** *they would have heard*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

audī or **audītō,** *hear, thou shalt hear*	**audīte** or **audītōte,** *hear, you shall hear*
audītō, *he shall hear*	**audiuntō,** *they shall hear*

NOUNS OF THE VERB

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE .	
Pres.	**audīre,** *to hear*	*Pres.*	**audiēns,** *hearing*
Perf.	**audīvisse,** *to have heard*		
Fut.	**audītūrus esse,** *to be going to hear*	*Fut.*	**audītūrus,** *going to hear*

GERUND		SUPINE	
Gen.	**audiendī,** *of hearing*		
Dat.	**audiendō,** *for hearing*		
Acc.	**audiendum,** *hearing*	*Acc.*	**audītum,** *to hear*
Abl.	**audiendō,** *by hearing*	*Abl.*	**audītū,** *in hearing*

82

VERBS IN -īre

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

352. (797.)   **audior,** *am heard*

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
audior, *I am heard*	**audīmur,** *we are heard*
audīris or **-re,** *thou art heard*	**audīminī,** *you are heard*
audītur, *he is heard*	**audiuntur,** *they are heard*

IMPERFECT TENSE

audiēbar, *I was heard*	**audiēbāmur,** *we were heard*
audiēbāre or **-ris,** *thou wert heard*	**audiēbāminī,** *you were heard*
audiēbātur, *he was heard*	**audiēbantur,** *they were heard*

FUTURE TENSE

audiar, *I shall be heard*	**audiēmur,** *we shall be heard*
audiēre or **-ris,** *thou wilt be heard*	**audiēminī,** *you will be heard*
audiētur, *he will be heard*	**audientur,** *they will be heard*

PERFECT TENSE

audītus sum, *I have been,* or *was heard*	**audītī sumus,** *we have been,* or *were heard*
audītus es, *thou hast been,* or *wert heard*	**audītī estis,** *you have been,* or *were heard*
audītus est, *he has been,* or *was heard*	**audītī sunt,** *they have been,* or *were heard*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

audītus eram, *I had been heard*	**audītī erāmus,** *we had been heard*
audītus erās, *thou hadst been heard*	**audītī erātis,** *you had been heard*
audītus erat, *he had been heard*	**audītī erant,** *they had been heard*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

audītus erō, *I shall have been heard*	**audītī erimus,** *we shall have been heard*
audītus eris, *thou wilt have been heard*	**audītī eritis,** *you will have been heard*
audītus erit, *he will have been heard*	**audītī erunt,** *they will have been heard*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
audiar, *may I be heard*	**audiāmur,** *may we be heard*
audiāre or **-ris,** *mayst thou be heard*	**audiāminī,** *may you be heard*
audiātur, *let him be heard*	**audiantur,** *let them be heard*

IMPERFECT TENSE

audīrer, *I should be heard*	**audīrēmur,** *we should be heard*
audīrēre or **-ris,** *thou wouldst be heard*	**audīrēminī,** *you would be heard*
audīrētur, *he would be heard*	**audīrentur,** *they would be heard*

PERFECT TENSE

audītus sim, *I may have been heard*	**audītī sīmus,** *we may have been heard*
audītus sīs, *thou mayst have been heard*	**audītī sītis,** *you may have been heard*
audītus sit, *he may have been heard*	**audītī sint,** *they may have been heard*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

audītus essem, *I should have been heard*	**audītī essēmus,** *we should have been heard*
audītus essēs, *thou wouldst have been heard*	**audītī essētis,** *you would have been heard*
audītus esset, *he would have been heard*	**audītī essent,** *they would have been heard*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

audīre or **audītor,** *be heard, thou shalt be heard*	**audīminī,** *be heard*
audītor, *he shall be heard*	**audiuntor,** *they shall be heard*

NOUNS OF THE VERB

INFINITIVE	GERUNDIVE
Pres. **audīrī,** *to be heard*	**audiendus,** *to be heard*
Perf. **audītus esse,** *to have been heard*	
	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
Fut. **audītum īrī,** *to be going to be heard*	**audītus,** *heard*

THE DEPONENT VERB

353. (798.) Deponents, that is, verbs with passive person endings and an active meaning (315), have these active noun forms: participles, the future infinitive, the gerund, and the supines. The perfect participle is usually active, but sometimes passive. The following is a synopsis of deponents:

PRINCIPAL PARTS			
queror, *complain*, querī, questus	miror, *wonder*, mīrārī, mīrātus vereor, *fear*, verērī, veritus partior, *share* partīrī, partītus		

	I. -ī	II. (1.) -ārī	(2.) -ērī	(3.) -īrī
		INDICATIVE MOOD		
Pres.	queror	mīror	vereor	partior
Imp.	querēbar	mīrābar	verēbar	partiēbar
Fut.	querar	mīrābor	verēbor	partiar
Perf.	questus sum	mīrātus sum	veritus sum	partītus sum
Plup.	questus eram	mīrātus eram	veritus eram	partītus eram
F. P.	questus erō	mīrātus erō	veritus erō	partītus erō
		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD		
Pres.	querar	mīrer	verear	partiar
Imp.	quererer	mīrārer	verērer	partīrer
Perf.	questus sim	mīrātus sim	veritus sim	partītus sim
Plup.	questus es- sem	mīrātus essem	veritus essem	partītus es- sem
		IMPERATIVE MOOD		
	querere	mīrāre	verēre	partīre
		PARTICIPLES		
Pres.	querēns	mīrāns	verēns	partiēns
Perf.	questus	mīrātus	veritus	partītus
Fut.	questūrus	mīrātūrus	veritūrus	partītūrus
		INFINITIVE		
Pres.	querī	mīrārī	verērī	partīrī
Perf.	questus esse	mīrātus esse	veritus esse	partītus esse
Fut.	questūrus es- se	mīrātūrus es- se	veritūrus esse	partītūrus es- se
		GERUND AND GERUNDIVE		
Gen.	querendī, etc. querendus	mīrandī, etc. mīrandus	verendī, etc. verendus	partiendī, etc. partiendus
		SUPINE		
Acc.	questum	*mīrātum	*veritum	*partītum
Abl.	*questū	mīrātū	*veritū	*partītū

354. (801.) A few verbs are deponent in the present system only: as, **dēvortor**, *turn in*, perfect **dēvortī**; **revortor**, *turn back*, perfect **revortī**, but with active perfect participle **revorsus**. Four are deponent in the perfect system only: **fīdō**, *trust*, **fīdere**, **fīsus**, and the compounds, **cōnfīdō**, **diffīdō**; and **audeō**, *dare*, **audēre**, **ausus**, **gaudeō**, *feel glad*, **gaudēre**, **gāvīsus**, and **soleō**, *am used*, **solēre**, **solitus**.

Most impersonals in -**ēre** have both an active and a deponent form in the perfect system: see 359, 360.

———

PERIPHRASTIC FORMS

355. (802.) The future active participle with a form of **sum** is used to denote an intended or future action: as,

rēctūrus sum, *I am going to rule, intend to rule*

	INDICATIVE MOOD	
	Singular	Plural
Pres.	rēctūrus sum, es, est	rēctūrī sumus, estis, sunt
Imp.	rēctūrus eram, erās, erat	rēctūrī erāmus, erātis, erant
Fut.	rēctūrus erō, eris, erit	rēctūrī erimus, eritis, erunt
Perf.	rēctūrus fuī, fuistī, fuit	rēctūrī fuimus, fuistis, fuērunt
Plup.	rēctūrus fueram, fuerās, fuerat	rēctūrī fuerāmus, fuerātis, fuerant
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
Pres.	rēctūrus sim, sīs, sit	rēctūrī sīmus, sītis, sint
Imp.	rēctūrus essem, essēs, esset	rēctūrī essēmus, essētis, essent
Perf.	rēctūrus fuerim, fuerīs, fuerit	rēctūrī fuerīmus, fuerītis, fuerint
Plup.	rēctūrus fuissem, fuissēs, fuisset	rēctūrī fuissēmus, fuissētis, fuissent
	INFINITIVE	
Pres.	rēctūrus esse	
Perf.	rēctūrus fuisse	

356. (804.) The gerundive with a form of **sum** is used to denote action which requires to be done: as,

regendus sum, *I am to be ruled, must be ruled*

	INDICATIVE MOOD	
	Singular	Plural
Pres.	regendus sum, es, est	regendī sumus, estis, sunt
Imp.	regendus eram, erās, erat	regendī erāmus, erātis, erant
Fut.	regendus erō, eris, erit	regendī erimus, eritis, erunt
Perf.	regendus fuī, fuistī, fuit	regendī fuimus, fuistis, fuērunt
Plup.	regendus fueram, fuerās, fuerat	regendī fuerāmus, fuerātis, fuerant
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
Pres.	regendus sim, sīs, sit	regendī sīmus, sītis, sint
Imp.	regendus essem, essēs, esset	regendī essēmus, essētis, essent
Perf.	regendus fuerim, fuerīs, fuerit	regendī fuerīmus, fuerītis, fuerint
Plup.	regendus fuissem, fuissēs, fuisset	regendī fuissēmus, fuissētis, fuissent
	INFINITIVE	
Pres.	regendus esse	
Perf.	regendus fuisse	

DEFECTIVE VERBS

357. (805.) Some verbs have only a few forms: as, **inquam**, *quoth I* (331); **āiō**, *avouch* (345). See also **cedo**, *give, tell*, **fārī**, *to lift up one's voice*, **havĕ** or **avē** and **salvē**, *all hail*, and **quaesō**, *prithee*, in the dictionary.

358. (812.) Some verbs have only the perfect system: so particularly **coepī**, *have begun, began;* and with a present meaning, **ōdī**, *have come to hate, hate;* and **meminī**, *have called to mind, remember*. The following is a synopsis of these three verbs:

	Active	Passive	Active	Active
	INDICATIVE MOOD			
Perf.	coepī	coeptus sum	ōdī	meminī
Plup.	coeperam	coeptus eram	ōderam	memineram
F. P.	coeperō	coeptus erō	ōderō	meminerō
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD			
Perf.	coeperim	coeptus sim	ōderim	meminerim
Plup.	coepissem	coeptus essem	ōdissem	meminissem
	IMPERATIVE MOOD			
Perf.	——	——	——	mementō, me-mentōte
	INFINITIVE			
Perf.	coepisse	coeptus esse	ōdisse	meminisse
	PARTICIPLES			
Perf.		coeptus	——	——
Fut.	coeptūrus		ōsūrus	——

359. (815.) Impersonal verbs have usually only the third person singular, and the infinitive present and perfect: as,

(*a.*) **pluit,** *it rains,* **tonat,** *it thunders,* and other verbs denoting the operations of nature. (*b.*) Also a few verbs in **-ēre** denoting feeling: as, **miseret,** *it distresses,* **miseritum est; paenitet,** *it repents,* **paenituit; piget,** *it grieves,* **piguit** or **pigitum est; pudet,** *it shames,* **puduit** or **puditum est; taedet,** *it is a bore,* **taesum est.**

360. (816.) Some other verbs, less correctly called impersonal, with an infinitive or a sentence as subject, are likewise defective: as,

libet, *it suits,* **libitum est, libuit; licet,** *it is allowed,* **licuit** or **licitum est; oportet,** *it is proper,* **oportuit; rē fert** or **rēfert,** *it concerns,* **rē ferre** or **rēferre, rē tulit** or **rētulit.** For the impersonal use of the third person singular passive, as **pūgnātur,** *there is fighting,* **pūgnandum est,** *there must be fighting,* see 314.

FORMATION OF STEMS

VARIABLE VOWEL

361. (824.) The final vowel of a tense stem is said to be *variable* when it is -o- in some of the forms, and -u-, -e-, or -i- in others.

362. (825.) The sign for the variable vowel is -°|ₑ-: thus, **reg°,ₑ-,** which may be read "**rego-** or **rege-,**" represents **rego-** or **regu-**, **rege-** or **regi-,** as seen in **rego-r** or **regu-nt**, **rege-re** or **regi-t**.

THE PRESENT SYSTEM

363. (828–853.) From the present stem (310) are formed the present, imperfect, and future indicative, the present and imperfect subjunctive, and the imperative.

VERBS IN -ere.

364. (829.) The present stem of many verbs in **-ere** is formed by adding a variable vowel -°|ₑ-, which appears in the first person singular active as -ō, to a root ending in a consonant or in two consonants: as,

Present Stem	Verb	From Theme
reg°|ₑ-	regō, *guide*	reg-
vert°|ₑ-	vertō, *turn*	vert-

Other examples are: **tegō,** *cover,* **petō,** *make for;* **pendō,** *hang;* **dīcō,** *say,* **fīdō,** *trust,* **scrībō,** *write;* **dūcō,** *lead.* **gignō,** *beget* (**g e n-, g n-**), has reduplication (56).

365. (831.) Some roots in a mute have a nasal before the mute in the present stem: as, **frangō,** *break* (**f r a g-**).   Other examples are: **iungō,** *join;* **linquō,** *leave,* **pingō,** *paint;* **fundō,** *pour;* **rumpō,** break.

366. (832.) The present stem of many verbs in **-ere** is formed by adding a suffix ending in a variable vowel -°|ₑ-,

89

which appears in the first person singular active as **-ō,** to a root: thus, **-nō, -scō, -tō, -iō:** as,

PRESENT STEM	VERB	FROM THEME
linᵒ|ₑ₋	linō, *besmear*	l i-
crēscᵒ|ₑ₋	crēscō, *grow*	c r ē-
pectᵒ|ₑ₋	pectō, *comb*	p e c-
capiᵒ|ₑ₋	capiō, *take*	c a p-

DENOMINATIVES

367. (839.) The present stem of denominatives is formed by attaching a variable vowel **-ᵒ\|ₑ₋,** to a theme consisting of a noun stem: as,

UNCONTRACTED PRESENT STEM	VERB	FROM THEME
cēnaᵒ|ₑ₋	cēnō, *dine*	cēnā-
flōreᵒ|ₑ₋	flōreō, *blossom*	flōre-
vestiᵒ|ₑ₋	vestiō, *dress*	vesti-
acuᵒ|ₑ₋	acuō, *point*	acu-

368. (840.) In most of the forms, the final vowel of the theme is contracted with the variable vowel: as,

laudō, laudā-s, laudā-mus, laudā-tis; monē-s, monē-mus, monē-tis; audī-s, audī-mus, audī-tis (44). In a few forms no contraction occurs: as, **moneō, audiō, audiu-nt, audie-ntis,** etc., **audie-ndus,** etc.

THE PERFECT SYSTEM

369. (854–884.) From the perfect stem (310) are formed the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

370. (854.) There are two kinds of perfect stems: Some verbs have as perfect stem a root, generally with some modification, but without a suffix (371–376). Some perfects are formed with a suffix, **-s-,** or **-v-,** or **-u-** (377–381).

PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX

371. (858.) Some verbs in **-ere** form their perfect stem by prefixing to the root its initial consonant with the following vowel, which, if **a,** is usually represented by **e**; this is called

the *Reduplicated Perfect*, and the first syllable is called the *Reduplication:* as,

PERFECT STEM	VERB	FROM THEME
pu-pug-	pungō, *punch*	p u g-
pe-pig-	pangō, *fix*	p a g-

372. (859.) Four verbs with vowel roots also have a reduplicated perfect stem: dō, *give, put,* dare, dedī; bibō, *drink,* bibere, bibī; stō, *stand,* stāre, stetī, *and* sistō, *set,* sistere, -stitī, rarely stitī.   Also four verbs in -ēre: mordeō, *bite,* momordī, pendeō, *hang,* pependī, spondeō, *promise,* spopondī, tondeō, *clip,* -totondī.   In the root syllable of spopondī, *promised,* stetī, *stood,* stitī, *set,* and the old scicidī, *clove,* an s is dropped.

373. (860.) In compounds the reduplication is commonly dropped; as, cecidī, *fell,* compound concidī, *tumbled down.*   Compounds of bibī, *drank,* didicī, *learned,* poposcī, *asked,* stitī, *set,* stetī, *stood,* and dedī, *gave, put,* retain the reduplication: as, restitī, *staid back.*

374. (862.) Some verbs in **-ere** have a perfect stem consisting of a consonant root with a long vowel: as,

PERFECT STEM	VERB	FROM THEME
ēd-	edō, *eat*	e d-
lēg-	legō, *pick up, read*	l e g-

Three verbs in -ēre also have this form, sedeō, *sit,* sēdī, strīdeō, *grate,* strīdī, videō, *see,* vīdī; and one in -īre, veniō, *come,* vēnī.

375. (865.) Verbs in -uō, -uere, both primitives and denominatives, have usually a perfect stem in short u: as, luō, *pay,* luī; acuō, *sharpen,* acuī.   fluō, *flow,* and struō, *pile,* have flūxī and strūxī.

376. (866.) Some verbs in **-ere** from roots ending in two consonants have a perfect stem consisting of the root: as,

PERFECT STEM	VERB	FROM THEME
mand-	mandō, *chew*	m a n d-
pand-	pandō, *open*	p a n d-

PERFECT STEM IN -s-, OR IN -v- OR -u-

377. (867.) Many verbs in **-ere** form their perfect stem by adding the suffix **-s-** to a root, which ends in a mute: as,

PERFECT STEM	VERB	FROM THEME
carp-s-	carpō, *pluck*	c a r p-
sculp-s-	sculpō, *carve*	s c u l p-
ges-s-	gerō, *bear*	g e s-
dīx-	dīcō, *say*	d ī c-

378. (868.) Some verbs in -ēre also have a perfect in -s-: as, **algeō**, *am cold*, **alsī**; **haereō**, *stick*, **haesī**.   Also some in -īre: as, **sarciō**, *patch*, **sarsī**.

379. (869, 871.) Some verbs in -ere, with vowel roots, and almost all verbs in -āre or -īre, form their perfect stem by adding the suffix -v- to a theme ending in a long vowel: as,

PERFECT STEM	VERB	FROM THEME
crē-v-	crēscō, *grow*	c r ē-
laudā-v-	laudō, *praise*	laudā-
audī-v-	audiō, *hear*	audī-

A few verbs in -ēre also have a perfect stem in -v-: as, **fleō**, *weep*, **flēre**, **flēvī**; see 431–433.

380. (873.) Many verbs in -ere form their perfect stem by adding the suffix -u- to a consonant root: as,

PERFECT STEM	VERB	FROM THEME
al-u-	alō, *nurture*	a l-
gen-u-	gīgnō, *beget*	g e n-

381. (874.) Some verbs in -āre also have a perfect stem in -u-: as, **crepō**, *rattle*, **crepāre**, **crepuī**; and many in -ēre: as, **moneō**, *warn*, **monēre**, **monuī**; also four in -īre: as, **saliō**, *leap*, **salīre**, **saluī**.

SHORT OR OLD FORMS

382. (846.) The second person singular imperative active of **dīcō**, **dūcō**, and **faciō**, is usually **dīc**, **dūc**, and **fac**, respectively, though the full forms, **dīce**, etc., are also used.

383. (886.) Shorter forms in the perfect indicative, the pluperfect subjunctive, and the infinitive, most of them from perfects in -s- (377), occur chiefly in verse: thus,

Perfect indicative, second person singular, common: as, **dīxtī**; plural, rare: as, **accestis**.   Pluperfect subjunctive singular, not very common: as, **exstinxem**, **vīxet**.

384. (889.) Shortened forms from perfect stems formed by the suffix -v- (438) are very common in all periods.

385. (890.) In tenses formed from perfect stems in -āv-, -ēv-, and -ōv-, v is often dropped before -is-, -ēr-, or -er-, and the vowels thus brought together are contracted : as,

laudāvistī, laudāsti; laudāvērunt, laudārunt; laudāveram, laudāram, etc.; laudāvissem, laudāssem, etc.; -plēvistis, -plēstis; plēverim, -plērim, etc.; nōvistī, nōsti; nōvistis, nōstis; nōvērunt, nōrunt; nōverim, nōrim, etc.

386. (893.) In tenses formed from perfect stems in -īv-, v is often dropped before -is-, -ēr-, or -er-; but contraction is common only in the forms which have -is-: as,

audīvistī, audīstī; audīvistis, audīstis; audīvērunt, audiērunt; audīverim, audierim, etc.; audīveram, audieram, etc.; audīvisse, audīsse.

NOUNS OF THE VERB   •

INFINITIVE

387. (894.) The active infinitive has the ending -re in the present, and -isse in the perfect : as,

regere, capere ; laudāre, monēre, audīre.   rēxisse ; laudāvisse, monuisse, audīvisse.

388. (896.) The present infinitive passive of verbs in -ere has the ending -ī; that of other verbs has -rī: as,

regī, capī ; laudārī, monērī, audīrī.

389. (897.) A longer form in -ier for -ī, and -rier for -rī, occurs sometimes in poetry: as, dīcier, *to be said ;* dominārier, *to be lord paramount.*

390. (898.) The place of the perfect passive, future active, and future passive infinitive is supplied by a circumlocution, as seen in the paradigms.

GERUNDIVE AND GERUND

391. (899.) The gerundive stem is formed by adding -ndo-, nominative -ndus, -nda, -ndum, to the present stem: as,

regendus, capiendus ; laudandus, monendus, audiendus. Verbs in -ere and -īre often have -undus, when not preceded by u or v: as, capiundus ; eō, *go*, always has eundum, and orior, *rise*, oriundus.

392. (900.) The supine stem is formed by the suffix -tu-, which is often changed to -su- (400).

This suffix is attached to a root or to a form of the present stem: as, nūntiātum, *to report*, nūntiātū, *in reporting*, stem nūntiātu-. Many of the commonest verbs have no supine: as, **sum, eō, ferō; regō, emō, tegō; amō, dēleō, doceō**, etc., etc.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

393. (901.) The present participle stem is formed by adding -nt-, or -nti-, nominative -ns, to the present stem: as,

regēns, capiēns; laudāns, monēns, audiēns.

FUTURE PARTICIPLE

394. (904.) The future participle suffix is -tūro-, nominative -tūrus, -tūra, -tūrum, which is often changed to -sūro-, nominative -sūrus, -sūra, -sūrum (400).

This suffix is added to a verb stem after the manner of the perfect participle (396): as, rēctūrus, *going to guide;* laudātūrus, *going to praise*.

395. (905.) Some future participles have a different formation from that of the perfect participle: as, **mortuus**, *dead*, **moritūrus**; see also in the dictionary **arguō, fruor, orior, ruō, secō.** And some verbs have two forms of the future participle: as, **āgnōscō, īgnōscō, hauriō, iuvō, pariō.**

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

396. (906.) The perfect participle suffix is -to-, nominative -tus, -ta, -tum, which is often changed to -so-, nominative -sus, -sa, -sum (400).

397. (908.) The perfect participle is formed in one of two separate ways:

398. (909.) From a verb stem consisting of a root; in this way the participles of most verbs in -ere and -ēre are formed: as,

gestus, *carried,* **aptus,** *fit,* **solūtus,** *loosed,* **iūnctus,** *joined,* **sparsus,** *sprinkled;* **doctus,** *taught.*

399. (910.) In some consonant root participles of verbs in **-ere, -āre,** or **-ēre,** which have the suffix **-u-** in the perfect stem (380), the **-to-** is preceded by a short **i**: as, **genitus,** *born;* **domitus,** *tamed;* **monitus,** *warned.* One participle has **-tuo-: mortuus,** *dead.*

400. (912.) With some roots in **-d-** or **-t-,** in **-l-, -m-,** or **-r-,** and a few others, **-to-** becomes **-so-:** as, **fossus,** *dug;* **pulsus,** *pushed;* of two **s**'s one is often dropped: as, **fīsus,** *trusting;* **versus,** *turned.*

401. (913.) From a verb stem in long **ā** or in long **ī**; in this way participles are regularly formed from denominatives in **-āre** or **-īre** respectively: as,

    laudātus, *praised;* **audītus,** *heard.*

LIST OF IMPORTANT VERBS

ARRANGED ACCORDING TO THE PRINCIPAL PARTS

402. (920.) The principal parts of root verbs and of verbs in **-ere** are formed in a variety of ways and are best learned separately for every verb (404–418).

403. (921.) The principal parts of verbs in **-āre, -ēre,** and **-īre,** are usually formed as follows:

laudō, *praise*	**laudāre**	**laudāvī**	**laudātus**
moneō, *advise*	**monēre**	**monuī**	**monitus**
audiō, *hear*	**audīre**	**audīvī**	**audītus**

For other formations, see 421–450.

I. PRIMITIVE VERBS

(A.) ROOT VERBS

404. (922.) Root verbs have their principal parts as follows:

sum, *am*	**esse**	**fuī**	———
pos-sum *can*	**pos-se**	**potuī**	———
dō, *give, put*	**dare**	**dedī**	**datus**
bibō, *drink*	**bibere**	**bibī**	**pōtus**
serō, *sow*	**serere**	**sēvī**	**satus**

Compounds have **i** for **a** in the perfect participle: as, **cōn-situs.**

95

sistō, *set*	sistere	-stitī, rarely stitī	status
eō, *go*	īre	iī, very rarely īvī	itum, -itus
edō, *eat*	ēsse	ēdī	ēsus
volō, *will, wish, want*	velle	voluī	————
nōlō, *won't*	nōlle	nōluī	————
mālō, *like better*	mālle	māluī	————
ferō, *carry*	ferre	(tulī)	(lātus)

(B.) VERBS IN -ere

(A.) PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX

405. (923–928.) The following verbs in **-ere** have a redupli-
cated perfect stem (371), and the perfect participle, when used,
in **-tus**:

| canō, *make music* | canere | cecinī | (cantātus) |
| tendō, *stretch* | tendere | tetendī | tentus |

Compounds have -tendī (373) and -tentus.

| pungō, *punch* | pungere | pupugī | punctus |
| tangō, *touch* | tangere | tetigī | tāctus |

Compounds have i for a in the present system: as, **con-tingō, con-
tingere, con-tigī** (373), **con-tāctus.**

tollō, *take off*	tollere	(sus-tulī)	(sub-lātus)
discō, *learn*	discere	didicī	————
poscō, *demand*	poscere	poposcī	————
pariō, *bring forth*	parere	peperī	partus

406. (929–932.) The following verbs in **-ere** have a redupli-
cated perfect stem (371), and the perfect participle, when
used, in **-sus** (400).

| cadō, *fall* | cadere | cecidī | -cāsus |

Compounds have i for a in the present system: as, **oc-cidō, oc-cidere,
oc-cidī** (373), **oc-cāsus.**

| caedō, *fell, cut* | caedere | cecīdī | caesus |

Compounds have ī for ae: as **ac-cīdō, ac-cīdere, ac-cīdī** (373), **ac-cīsus.**

parcō, *spare*	parcere	pepercī	————
pendō, *weigh, pay*	pendere	pependī	pēnsus
tundō, *pound*	tundere	tutudī not used	tūnsus

Compounds have the perfect -tudī (373), and the participle commonly
-tūsus.

| currō, *run* | currere | cucurrī | cursum |

For perfect of compounds, see 373.

| fallō, *cheat* | fallere | fefellī | falsus |

Compound re-fellō, re-fellere, re-fellī (373), ———.

| pellō, *push* | pellere | pepulī | pulsus |

Compounds usually have -pulī (373).

407. (933–935.) The following verbs in **-ere** have lost the reduplication:

findō, *split apart*	findere	-fidī, rarely fidī	fissus
scindō, *rend*	scindere	-scidī, rarely scidī	scissus
per-cellō, *knock down*	per-cellere	per-culī	per-culsus

408. (936–940.) The following verbs in **-ere** have a perfect stem consisting of a consonant root with a long vowel (374), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-tus**:

| agō, *drive* | agere | ēgī | āctus |

Compounds have i for a in the present system: as, **ab-igō, ab-igere, ab-ēgī, ab-āctus**; but **per-agō** retains **a**. **cōgō** is contracted: **cōgō, cō-gere, co-ēgī, co-āctus.**

emō, *take, buy*	emere	ēmī	ēmptus
———, *strike*	———	īcī	ictus
legō, *pick up, read*	legere	lēgī	lēctus

Compounds with **ad, inter, nec-, per, prae,** and **re-,** have -legō in the present system, others -ligō. For **dī-ligō, intel-legō, neg-legō,** see 412.

| frangō, *smash* | frangere | frēgī | frāctus |

Compounds have i for a in the present system: as, **cōn-fringō, cōn-fringere, cōn-frēgī, cōn-frāctus.**

linquo, *leave*	linquere	līquī	-līctus
rumpō, *burst*	rumpere	rūpī	ruptus
vincō, *conquer*	vincere	vīcī	vīctus
pavēscō, *get afraid*	pavēscere	ex-pāvī	———
capiō, *take*	capere	cēpī	captus

Compounds have i for a in the present system and e in the perfect participle: as, **in-cipiō, in-cipere, in-cēpī, in-ceptus.**

| faciō, *make* | facere | fēcī | factus |

Compounds have i for a in the present system and e in the perfect participle: as, **ef-ficiō, ef-ficere, ef-fēcī, ef-fectus.**

| fugiō, *run away* | fugere | fūgī | ———— |
| iaciō, *throw* | iacere | iēcī | iactus |

Compounds have -iciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus: as, ē-iciō, ē-icere, ē-iēcī, ē-iectus.

409. (941–946.) The following verbs in **-ere** have a perfect stem consisting of a consonant root with a long vowel (374), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-sus** (400):

cūdō, *hammer*	cūdere	-cūdī	-cūsus
sīdō, *settle*	sīdere	sīdī, -sīdī, -sēdī	-sessus
fundō, *pour*	fundere	fūdī	fūsus
vīsō, *go to see* ·	vīsere	vīsī	————
fodiō, *dig*	fodere	fōdī	fossus

410. (947–948.) The following verbs in **-ere** have the perfect stem in **-u-** or in **-v-** (375), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-tus**:

acuō, *sharpen*	acuere	acuī	acūtus adjective
arguō, *make clear*	arguere	arguī	argūtus rare
con-gruō, *agree*	con-gruere	con-gruī	————
im-buō, *give a smack of*	im-buere	im-buī	im-būtus
ind-uō, *don*	ind-uere	ind-uī	ind-ūtus
luō, *pay, atone for*	luere	luī	-lūtus, *washed*
metuō, *fear*	metuere	metuī	metūtus once
-nuō, *nod*	-nuere	-nuī	————
ruō, *tumble down*	ruere	ruī	-rutus
so-lvō, *loose*	so-lvere	so-lvī	so-lūtus
spuō, *spit*	spuere	-spuī	————
statuō, *set*	statuere	statuī	statūtus

Compounds have i for a throughout: as, cōn-stituō, cōn-stituere, etc.

volvō, *roll*	volvere	volvī	volūtus
suō, *sew*	suere	-suī	sūtus
tribuō, *assign*	tribuere	tribuī	tribūtus

411. (949–951.) The following verbs in **-ere** have a perfect stem consisting of a root ending in two consonants (376), and the perfect participle in **-sus** (400):

| -cendō, *light* | -cendere | -cendī | -cēnsus |
| -fendō, *hit* | -fendere | -fendī | -fēnsus |

pandō, *open*	pandere	pandī	pāssus, pānsus
pre-hendō, *seize*	pre-hendere	pre-hendī	pre-hēnsus

Often **prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsus.**

scandō, *climb*	scandere	-scendī	-scēnsus

Compounds have **e** for **a** throughout : as, **dē-scendō, dē-scendere,** etc.

verrō, *sweep*	verrere	-verrī	versus
vertō, *turn*	vertere	vertī	versus
vellō, *tear*	vellere	vellī	vulsus

(B.) PERFECT STEM IN -s-, OR IN -v- OR -u-

PERFECT STEM IN -s-

412. (952–956.) The following verbs in **-ere** have the perfect stem in **-s-** (377), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-tus** :

carpō, *nibble, pluck*	carpere	carpsī	carptus
cōmō, *put up*	cōmere	cōmpsī	cōmptus
coquō, *cook*	coquere	cōxī	coctus
dēmō, *take away*	dēmere	dēmpsī	dēmptus
dīcō, *say*	dīcere	dīxī	dictus
dī-ligō, *esteem*	dī-ligere	dī-lēxī	dī-lēctus
dūcō, *lead*	dūcere	dūxī	ductus
-flīgō, *smash*	-flīgere	-flīxī	-flīctus
gerō, *carry*	gerere	gessī	gestus
intel-legō, *understand*	intel-legere	intel-lēxī	intel-lēctus
neg-legō, *disregard*	neg-legere	neg-lēxī	neg-lēctus
nūbō, *veil, marry (a man)*	nūbere	nūpsī	nūpta
prōmō, *take out*	prōmere	prōmpsī	prōmptus
regō, *guide, rule*	regere	rēxī	rēctus
rēpō, *creep*	rēpere	rēpsī	———
scrībō, *write*	scrībere	scrīpsī	scrīptus
sculpō, *carve*	sculpere	sculpsī	sculptus
struō, *build up*	struere	strūxī	strūctus
sūmō, *take up*	sūmere	sūmpsī	sūmptus
tegō, *cover*	tegere	tēxī	tēctus
trahō, *drag*	trahere	trāxī	trāctus
ūrō, *burn*	ūrere	ussī	ūstus
vehō, *cart*	vehere	vēxī	vectus
vīvō, *live*	vīvere	vīxī	———
cingō, *gird*	cingere	cinxī	cinctus

fingō, *mould*	fingere	finxī	fictus
iungō, *join*	iungere	iūnxī	iūnctus
pingō, *paint*	pingere	pinxī	pīctus
plangō, *beat*	plangere	planxī	planctus
stinguō, *poke, poke out*	stinguere	-stinxī	-stinctus
stringō, *peel, graze*	stringere	strinxī	strictus
tingō, *wet*	tingere	tinxī	tinctus
unguō, *anoint*	unguere	ūnxī	ūnctus
temnō, *scorn*	temnere	(con-tempsī)	(con-temptus)
in-liciō, *inveigle*	in-licere	in-lēxī	in-lectus
pel-liciō, *lead astray*	pel-licere	pel-lēxī	pel-lectus
-spiciō, *spy*	-spicere	-spēxī	-spectus

413. (957–961.) The following verbs in **-ere** have the perfect stem in **-s-** (377), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-sus** (400):

cēdō, *move along*	cēdere	cessī	cessus
claudō, *shut*	claudere	clausī	clausus

Compounds have ū for au throughout.

dī-vidō, *separate*	dī-videre	dī-vīsī	dī-vīsus
fīgō, *pin*	fīgere	fīxī	fīxus, twice fīctus
fluō, *flow*	fluere	flūxī	fluxus adjective
laedō, *hurt*	laedere	laesī	laesus

Compounds have ī for ae throughout: as, in-līdō, in-līdere, etc.

lūdō, *play*	lūdere	lūsī	lūsus
mittō, *send*	mittere	mīsī	missus
mergō, *dip, duck*	mergere	mersī	mersus
plaudō, *clap*	plaudere	plausī	plausus
premō, *squeeze*	premere	pressī	pressus

Compounds have i for e in the present system: as, com-primō, etc.

rādō, *scrape*	rādere	rāsī	rāsus
spargō, *scatter*	spargere	sparsī	sparsus

Compounds usually have e for a throughout: as, cōn-spergō, etc.

trūdō, *shove*	trūdere	trūsī	trūsus
vādō, *go*	vādere	-vāsī	-vāsus
flectō, *turn*	flectere	flexī	flexus
nectō, *bind together*	nectere	nexī, nexuī	nexus
quatiō, *shake*	quatere	-cussī	quassus

Compounds have u for a: as, in-cutiō, in-cutere, in-cussī, in-cussus.

PERFECT STEM IN -v-

414. (962–966.) The following verbs in **-ere** have the perfect stem in **-v-**, preceded by a long vowel of the root (379), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-tus**:

terō, *rub*	terere	trīvī	trītus
cernō, *sift, separate, see*	cernere	crēvī, *decided*	certus, -crētus
linō, *besmear*	linere	lēvī, rarely līvī	litus
sinō, *leave, let*	sinere	sīvī, -siī	situs
spernō, *spurn*	spernere	sprēvī	sprētus
sternō, *strew*	sternere	strāvī	strātus
crēscō, *grow*	crēscere	crēvī	crētus
nōscō, *get to know*	nōscere	nōvī	nōtus adjective

Compounds: ī-gnōscō, ī-gnōvī, ī-gnōtum; ā-gnōscō, ā-gnōvī, ā-gnitus; cō-gnōscō, cō-gnōvī, cō-gnitus.

pāscō, *feed*	pāscere	pāvī	pāstus
scīscō, *enact*	scīscere	scīvī,	scītus

415. (966–970.) The following verbs in -ere have the perfect stem in **-v-**, preceded by the long vowel of a presumed denominative stem, and the perfect participle, when used, in **-tus**:

petō, *aim at*	petere	petīvī, petiī	petītus
quaerō, *inquire*	quaerere	quaesīvī	quaesītus

Compounds usually have ī for **ae** throughout: as, **con-quīrō, con-quīrere**, etc.

ad-olēscō, *grow up*	ad-olēscere	ad-olēvī	ad-ultus
obs-olēscō, *get worn out*	obs-olēscere	obs-olēvī	obs-olētus adj.
quiēscō, *get still*	quiēscere	quiēvī	quiētus adjective
suēscō, *get used*	suēscere	suēvī	suētus
cupiō, *want*	cupere	cupīvī	cupītus
sapiō, *have a smack*	sapere	sapīvī	————
ar-cēssō, *send for*	ar-cēssere	ar-cēssīvī	ar-cēssītus

Sometimes **ac-cersō**, etc.

capēssō, *undertake*	capēssere	capēssīvī	————
lacēssō, *provoke*	lacēssere	lacēssīvī	lacēssītus

416. (971–976.) The following verbs in **-ere** have the perfect stem in **-u-** (380), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-tus**; in some participles **-tus** is preceded by a short **i**, thus, **-itus** (399):

alō, *bring up*	alere	aluī	altus, later alitus
colō, *till, stay round, court*	colere	coluī	cultus
cōn-sulō, *consult*	cōn-sulere	cōn-suluī	cōn-sultus
fremō, *growl*	fremere	fremuī	——
gemō, *groan*	gemere	gemuī	——
molō, *grind*	molere	moluī	molitus
pōnō, *place*	pōnere	po-suī	po-situs
serō, *string*	serere	-seruī	sertus
strepō, *make a racket*	strepere	strepuī	——
texō, *weave*	texere	texuī	textus
tremō, *quake*	tremere	tremuī	——
vomō, *throw up*	vomere	vomuī	——
gīgnō, *beget*	gīgnere	genuī	genitus
ac-cumbō, *lie by*	ac-cumbere	ac-cubuī	ac-cubitus

So also in-cumbō; dis-cumbō has dis-cubuī, dis-cubitum. Compounds with dē, ob, prō, re-, and sub, have -cubuī, ——.

ē-liciō, *coax out*	ē-licere	ē-licuī	ē-licitus
rapiō, *seize*	rapere	rapuī	raptus

Compounds have i for a in the present and perfect systems, and e in the perfect participle: as, ē-ripiō, ē-ripere, ē-ripuī, ē-reptus.

ārēscō, *dry up*	ārēscere	-āruī	——
calēscō, *get warm*	calēscere	-caluī	——
crēbrēscō, *get common*	crēbrēscere	-crēbruī	——
dūrēscō, *get hard*	dūrēscere	dūruī	——
fervēscō, *boil up*	fervēscere	-ferbuī, -fervī	——
flōrēscō, *blossom out*	flōrēscere	-flōruī	——
horrēscō, *bristle up*	horrēscere	-horruī	——
mātūrēscō, *ripen*	mātūrēscere	mātūruī	——
ob-mūtēscō, *get still*	ob-mūtēscere	ob-mūtuī	——
senēscō, *grow old*	senēscere	-senuī	——
tepēscō, *get lukewarm*	tepēscere	-tepuī	——
-timēscō, *get scared*	-timēscere	-timuī	——

DEPONENTS IN -ī

417. (977–981.) The following deponents in -ī have the perfect participle in **-tus**, except **morior**, which has **-tuus**:

fruor, *enjoy*	fruī	frūctus
loquor, *speak*	loquī	locūtus
queror, *complain*	querī	questus
sequor, *follow*	sequī	secūtus
fungor, *get quit*	fungī	fūnctus
apīscor, *lay hold of*	apīscī	aptus

Compounds have i and e for a: as, **ad-ipīscor, ad-ipīscī, ad-eptus.**

com-mīniscor, *devise*	com-mīniscī	com-mentus
nancīscor, *get*	nancīscī	nactus, nanctus
nāscor, *am born*	nāscī	nātus
ob-līvīscor, *forget*	ob-līvīscī	ob-lītus
pacīscor, *bargain*	pacīscī	pactus

Compounds: **dē-pecīscor, dē-pecīscī, dē-pectus**; **com-pectus.**

pro-ficīscor, *start on*	pro-ficīscī	pro-fectus
ulcīscor, *avenge*	ulcīscī	ūltus
morior, *die*	morī	mortuus
orior, *rise*	orīrī	ortus
potior, *master*	potīrī	potītus

418. (982–986.) The following deponents in -ī have the perfect participle in **-sus** (400):

lābor, *tumble down*	lābī	lapsus
nītor, *rest on*	nītī	nīsus, nīxus
ūtor, *use*	ūtī	ūsus
am-plector, *hug round*	am-plectī	am-plexus
gradior, *step*	gradī	gressus
patior, *suffer*	patī	passus

Compounds of these two verbs have e for a: as, **ad-gredior, per-petior, per-pessus.**

II. Denominative Verbs

419. (987.) Most verbs in -āre, -ēre, and -īre (or in -ārī, -ērī, and -īrī) are denominatives.

420. (988.) Some primitives from vowel roots have the

form of denominatives in the present system, or throughout; and some verbs with a denominative present system have the perfect and perfect participle formed directly from a root.

(1.) VERBS IN -āre

(A.) PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX

421. (989.) The following verb in -āre has a reduplicated perfect stem (372):

| stō, *stand* | stāre | stetī | ——— |

422. (990.) The following verbs in -āre have a perfect stem consisting of a root which ends in -v- and has a long vowel, and the perfect participle in -tus:

| iuvō, *help* | iuvāre | iūvī | iūtus once |
| lavō, *bathe* | lavāre | lāvī | lautus |

Forms in -ere are very common in the present tense.

(B.) PERFECT STEM IN -v- OR -u-

PERFECT STEM IN -v-

423. (992.) Most verbs in -āre have the perfect stem in -v- (379), and the perfect participle in -tus, both preceded by a form of the present stem in long -ā-: as,

laudō, *praise*	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātus
līberō, *free*	līberāre	līberāvī	līberātus
nōminō, *name*	nōmināre	nōmināvī	nōminātus
spērō, *hope*	spērāre	spērāvī	spērātus

PERFECT STEM IN -u-

424. (993.) The following verbs in -āre have the perfect stem in -u- (381), and the perfect participle, when used, in -tus; in some participles, -tus is preceded by a short **i**, thus, -itus (399):

crepō, *rattle*	crepāre	crepuī	(in-crepitus)
cubō, *lie*	cubāre	cubuī	———
domō, *tame*	domāre	domuī	domitus
fricō, *rub down*	fricāre	fricuī	frictus

micō, *quiver*	micāre	micuī	——
-plicō, *fold*	-plicāre	-plicuī	-plicitus
secō, *cut*	secāre	secuī	sectus
sonō, *sound*	sonāre	sonuī	——
tonō, *thunder*	tonāre	tonuī	(at-tonitus)
vetō, *forbid*	vetāre	vetuī	vetitus

DEPONENTS IN -ārī

425. (994.) There are many deponents in **-ārī**, with the perfect participle in **-ātus**: as,

hortor, *exhort*	hortārī	hortātus

(2.)   VERBS IN -ēre

(A.) PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX

426. (995.) The following verbs in **-ēre** have a reduplicated perfect stem (372), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-sus** (400):

mordeō, *bite*	mordēre	momordī	morsus
pendeō, *am hung*	pendēre	pependī	——
spondeō, *covenant*	spondēre	spopondī	spōnsus
tondeō, *shear*	tondēre	-totondī, -tondī	tōnsus

427. (996.) The following verbs in **-ēre** have a perfect stem consisting of a root which ends in **-v-** and has a long vowel, and the perfect participle, when used, in **-tus**:

caveō, *look out*	cavēre	cāvī	cautus
faveō, *am friendly*	favēre	fāvī	——
foveō, *warm, cherish*	fovēre	fōvī	fōtus
moveō, *move*	movēre	mōvī	mōtus
voveō, *vow*	vovēre	vōvī	vōtus

428. (997.) Three verbs in **-ēre** have a perfect stem consisting of a consonant root with a long vowel, and the perfect participle in **-sus** (400):

sedeō, *sit*	sedēre	sēdī	-sessus

Compounds have **i** for **e** in the present system: as, **ob-sideō**, etc.

strīdeō, *grate*	strīdēre	strīdī	——
videō, *see*	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus

(B.) PERFECT STEM IN -s-, OR IN -v- OR -u-
PERFECT STEM IN -s-

429. (999.) The following verbs in **-ēre** have the perfect stem in **-s-** (378), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-tus**:

augeō, *increase*	augēre	auxī	auctus
in-dulgeō, *am kind*	in-dulgēre	in-dulsī	——
lūceō, *beam*	lūcēre	lūxī	——
torqueō, *twist*	torquēre	torsī	tortus

430. (1000.) The following verbs in **-ēre** have the perfect stem in **-s-** (378), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-sus** (400):

algeō, *feel cold*	algēre	alsī	——
ārdeō, *blaze*	ārdēre	ārsī	——
fulgeō, *flash*	fulgēre	fulsī	——
haereō, *stick*	haerēre	haesī	
iubeō, *order*	iubēre	iūssī	iūssus
maneō, *stay,*	manēre	mānsī	mānsum
mulceō, *stroke*	mulcēre	mulsī	mulsus adjective
rīdeō, *laugh*	rīdēre	rīsī	-rīsus
suādeō, *advise*	suādēre	suāsī	suāsus
tergeō, *wipe*	tergēre	tersī	tersus
urgeō, *push*	urgēre	ursī	——

431. (1001.) The following verbs in **-ēre** have the perfect stem in **-v-** (379), and the perfect participle in **-tus**, both preceded by a long **-ē-** of the root:

dē-leō, *wipe out*	dē-lēre	dē-lēvī	dē-lētus
fleō, *weep*	flēre	flēvī	flētus
-pleō, *fill*	-plēre	-plēvī	-plētus

432. (1002.) The following verb in **-ēre** has the perfect stem in **-v-** (379), preceded by long **-ī-**, and the perfect·participle in **-tus**, preceded by short **-i-** of the root:

cieō, *set a going*	ciēre	cīvī	citus

433. (1003.) The following verb in **-ēre** has the perfect stem in **-v-** (379), and the perfect participle in **-itus** (399):

ab-oleō, *destroy*	ab-olēre	ab-olēvī	ab-olitus

PERFECT STEM IN -u-

434. (1004.) Most verbs in -ēre have the perfect stem in -u- (381), and the perfect participle, when used, in -tus, which is usually preceded by a short i (399): as,

doceō, *teach*	docēre	docuī	doctus
habeō, *have*	habēre	habuī	habitus

Compounds have i for a: as, pro-hibeō, pro-hibēre, pro-hibuī, pro-hibitus. Compounds with dē and prae are regularly contracted, dēbeō, praebeō, etc.

mereō, *earn*	merēre	meruī	meritus

Often deponent : mereor, merērī, meritus.

misceō, *mix*	miscēre	miscuī	mixtus, mistus
moneō, *advise*	monēre	monuī	monitus
placeō, *am pleasing*	placēre	placuī	placitus
taceō, *hold my tongue*	tacēre	tacuī	tacitus adjective
teneō, *hold*	tenēre	tenuī	-tentus

Compounds have i for e in the present and perfect: as, dē-tineō, dē-tinuī, dē-tentus.

terreō, *scare*	terrēre	terruī	territus
torreō, *roast*	torrēre	torruī	tostus

435. (1005.) The following verb in -ēre has the perfect stem in -u- (381), and the perfect participle in -sus (400):

cēnseō, *count, rate*	cēnsēre	cēnsuī	cēnsus

436. (1006.) The following verbs in -ēre have the perfect stem in -u- (381), and no perfect participle :

arceō, *check*	arcēre	arcuī	————

The compounds co-erceō and ex-erceō have e for a, and perfect participles co-ercitus and ex-ercitus.

caleō, *am warm*	calēre	caluī	————
careō, *have not*	carēre	caruī	————
doleō, *ache*	dolēre	doluī	————
egeō, *need*	egēre	eguī	————
ē-mineō, *stick out*	ē-minēre	ē-minuī	————
flōreō, *bloom*	flōrēre	flōruī	————
horreō, *bristle up*	horrēre	horruī	————

iaceō, *lie*	iacēre	iacuī	——
lateō, *lie hid*	latēre	latuī	——
niteō, *shine*	nitēre	nituī	——
noceō, *am hurtful*	nocēre	nocuī	——
oleō, *smell*	olēre	oluī	——
palleō, *look pale*	pallēre	palluī	——
pāreō, *wait on, am obedient*	pārēre	pāruī	——
pateō, *am open*	patēre	patuī	——
sileō, *am silent*	silēre	siluī	——
studeō, *am eager*	studēre	studuī	——
stupeō, *am dazed*	stupēre	stupuī	——
timeō, *fear*	timēre	timuī	——
valeō, *am strong*	valēre	valuī	——
vigeō, *feel strong*	vigēre	viguī	——

DEPONENTS IN -ērī

437. (1008.) The following deponent in -ērī has the perfect participle in -tus:

reor, *reckon, think*   rērī   ratus

438. (1009.) The following deponents in -ērī have the perfect participle in -tus, which is preceded by a short i (399).

liceor, *bid*	licērī	licitus
misereor, *pity*	miserērī	miseritus
tueor, *look to, protect*	tuērī	tuitus late
vereor, *am awed at*	verērī	veritus

439. (1010.) One deponent in -ērī has the perfect participle in -sus (400):

fateor, *confess*   fatērī   fassus

Compounds have i and e for a: as, cōn-fiteor, cōn-fessus.

(3.) VERBS IN -īre

(A.) PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX

440. (1011.) The following verb in -īre has a reduplicated perfect stem, and the perfect participle in -tus:

re-periō, *find*   re-perīre   re-pperī   re-pertus

The following verb in **-īre** has no reduplication in the perfect stem, and the perfect participle in **-tus**:

com-periō, *find out*	com-perīre	com-perī	com-pertus

441. (1013.) The following verb in **-īre** has a perfect stem consisting of a consonant root with a long vowel (374), and the perfect participle in **-tus**:

veniō, *come*	venīre	vēnī	ventum, -ventus

(B.)   PERFECT STEM IN **-s-**, OR IN **-v-** OR **-u-**

PERFECT STEM IN **-s-**

442. (1014.) The following verbs in **-īre** have the perfect stem in **-s-** (378), and the perfect participle in **-tus**:

farciō, *stuff*	farcīre	farsī	fartus
fulciō, *prop*	fulcīre	fulsī	fultus
hauriō, *drain*	haurīre	hausī	haustus
saepiō, *hedge in*	saepīre	saepsī	saeptus
sanciō, *hallow*	sancīre	sanxī	sānctus adjective
sarciō, *patch*	sarcīre	sarsī	sartus
vinciō, *bind*	vincīre	vinxī	vinctus

443. (1015.) The following verb in **-īre** has the perfect stem in **-s-** (378), and the perfect participle in **-sus** (400):

sentiō, *feel*	sentīre	sēnsī	sēnsus

PERFECT STEM IN **-v-**

444. (1016.) The following verb in **-īre** has the perfect stem in **-v-** (379), and the perfect participle in **-tus**, both preceded by a long ī of the root:

sciō, *know*	scīre	scīvī	scītus

445. (1017.) The following verb in **-īre** has the perfect stem in **-v-** (379), and the perfect participle in **-tus**:

sepeliō, *bury*	sepelīre	sepelīvī	sepultus

446. (1018.) Most verbs in **-īre** have the perfect stem in **-v-** (379), and the perfect participle in **-tus**, both preceded by a form of the present stem in long **-ī-**: as,

audiō, *hear*	audīre	audīvī	audītus

PERFECT STEM IN -u-

447. (1019.) The following verbs in **-īre** have the perfect stem in **-u-** (381), and the perfect participle, when used, in **-tus:**

am-iciō, *don*	**am-icīre**	**am-icuī**	**am-ictus**
ap-eriō, *open*	**ap-erīre**	**ap-eruī**	**ap-ertus**
op-eriō, *cover over*	**op-erīre**	**op-eruī**	**op-ertus**
saliō, *leap*	**salīre**	**saluī**	———

Compounds have **i** for **a** throughout: as, **īn-siliō.**

DEPONENTS IN -īrī

448. (1020.) The following deponents in **-īrī** have the perfect participle in **-tus:**

ex-perior, *try*	**ex-perīrī**	**ex-pertus**
op-perior, *wait for*	**op-perīrī**	**op-pertus**

449. (1021.) The following deponents in **-īrī** have the perfect participle in **-ītus:**

largior, *shower*	**largīrī**	**largītus**
mentior, *tell lies*	**mentīrī**	**mentītus**
sortior, *draw lots*	**sortīrī**	**sortītus**

450. (1022.) The following deponents in **-īrī** have the perfect participle in **-sus** (400):

mētior, *measure*	**mētīrī**	**mēnsus**
ordior, *begin*	**ordīrī**	**orsus**

110

Part Second—Sentences

451. (1023.) A SENTENCE is a thought expressed by means of a verb. The SUBJECT is that which is spoken of. The PREDICATE is that which is said of the subject.

452. (1024.) A SIMPLE SENTENCE is one which has only one subject and one predicate.

Thus, **Rhodanus fluit**, *the Rhone flows*, is a simple sentence: the subject is **Rhodanus** and the predicate is **fluit**.

453. (1025.) The sentence may be *declarative*, stating a fact, *exclamatory*, crying out about something, *interrogative*, asking a question, or *imperative*, giving a command.

THE SUBJECT

454. (1026.) The subject is a substantive, or any word or words having the value of a substantive.

455. (1027.) The subject of a verb is in the nominative case.

456. (1029.) With the first or the second person, the subject is expressed by a personal pronoun (**ego tū, nōs vōs**) only when somewhat emphatic. Otherwise the verb of the first or second person is not attended by a personal pronoun: as, **eram**, *I was*, **erās**, *thou wert*.

457. (1030.) The subject is regularly omitted when it is general and indefinite, in the first person plural: as, **intellegimus**, *we understand*; and second person singular: as, **putārēs**, *you*, or *anybody would have thought*.

111

458. (1031.) The subject of the first or second person is sometimes a substantive, contrary to the English idiom: as, **Hannibal petō pācem,** *I Hannibal am suing for peace.* **exoriāre aliquis nostrīs ex ossibus ūltor,** *from out our bones mayst some avenger spring.*

459. (1032.) With the third person the subject is regularly expressed, unless the general " he she it," or " they " implied in the person ending is definite enough. For impersonal verbs, see 359.

THE PREDICATE

460. (1035.) The predicate is either a verb alone, or a verb of indeterminate meaning with a predicate nominative added to complete the sense.

Verbs of indeterminate meaning are such as mean *am* (something), *become, remain, seem, am thought, am called* or *named, am chosen.*

461. (1036.) The verb is sometimes omitted, when it is easily understood. So particularly forms of **sum**: as, **omnia praeclāra rāra,** sc. **sunt,** *all that's very fair is rare.* **mortuus Cūmīs,** sc. **est,** *he died at Cumae.*

ENLARGEMENT OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE

462. (1039–1043.) An ATTRIBUTE is an essential addition to a substantive, uniting with it as one idea: as,

hostium castra, *camp of the enemy.* **vīctor Rōmulus rēx,** *victorious king Romulus.* **vir sine metū,** *a man without fear.* **bovēs mīrā speciē,** *kine of wondrous beauty.*

463. (1045.) An APPOSITIVE is a separate substantive added as an explanation to another substantive, and in the same case, but not like the attribute uniting with it as one idea: as,

Hamilcar, Mārs alter, *Hamilcar, a second Mars.* **Cornēlia, māter Gracchōrum,** *Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi.*

464. (1048.) The predicate may be enlarged by the addition of accusatives (495), datives (525), or predicate nouns (465).

465. (1051.) A predicate noun, either substantive or adjective, denoting " office, time, age, order, condition," or the like, is often added to other verbs besides those of indeterminate meaning (460): as,

Iūnius aedem dictātor dēdicāvit, *Junius dedicated a temple in his*

capacity as dictator, not *Junius the dictator*.   **litterās Graecās senex**
didicī, *I learned Greek when I was an old man.*

COMBINATION OF SENTENCES

466. (1055.) Simple sentences may be combined in two
different ways.   The added sentence may be I. Coordinate;
or II. Subordinate.

Thus, in *he died and we lived*, the two sentences are coordinate, that
is, of equal rank.   But in *he died that we might live*, the sentence be-
ginning with *that* is subordinate.   In either combination the separate
sentences are often called *Clauses* or *Members*.

I. THE COMPOUND SENTENCE OR COORDINATION

467. (1056.) A COMPOUND SENTENCE is one which
consists of two or more coordinate simple sentences:
as,

tū mē amās, ego tē amō, *thou art in love with me, I'm in love with*
thee.   **ā tē petō, mē dēfendās,** *I ask it of you, protect me.*

II. THE COMPLEX SENTENCE OR SUBORDINATION

468. (1058.) A COMPLEX SENTENCE is one which con-
sists of a main and a subordinate sentence: as,

centuriōnēs praemittit (main sentence), **quī locum idōneum castrīs**
dēligant (subordinate sentence), *he sends some officers ahead to select a*
suitable spot for the camp.   **ā tē petō** (main sentence), **ut mē dēfendās**
(subordinate sentence), *I ask it of you that you protect me.*

AGREEMENT

(A.) OF THE VERB

469. (1062.) A verb agrees with its subject in num-
ber and person: as,

Rhodanus fluit, *the Rhone flows.*   **nōs, nōs, dīcō apertē, cōnsulēs dē-**
sumus, *it is ourselves, yes, ourselves, I will speak without reserve, the*

H   113

consuls, who fail in our duty. **vōs vōbīs cōnsulite,** *do you look out for* ·
yourselves.

470. (1064.) With two or more singular subjects, the verb is often in
the plural : as,

**iīsdem ferē temporibus fuērunt C. Cotta, P. Sulpicius, Q. Varius, Cn.
Pompōnius,** *in about the same times lived Cotta, Sulpicius, Varius, and
Pomponius.* **cum senātus populusque Rōmānus pācem comprobāverint,**
when the senate and the people of Rome sanction peace. **utrōsque et lau-
dis cupiditās et timor īgnōminiae excitābant,** *both of these eagerness for
glory in the first place and secondly fear of disgrace spurred on.*

471. (1066.) Often, however, with two or more singular subjects, the
verb is put in the singular : as,

**tum Gorgiās, Thrasymachus, Prodicus, Hippiās in māgnō honōre
fuit,** *at that time Gorgias, Thrasymachus, Prodicus, and Hippias were in
high renown.* **senātus populusque Rōmānus voluit,** *senate and people of
Rome ordained.* **tālis senātōrum et dīgnitās et multitūdō fuit,** *both the
position and number of the senators was such.*

472. (1071.) Collectives have usually a singular verb. But the plural
is sometimes used, especially when the subject is separated from its
verb, or is to be supplied from a preceding clause : as,

cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs conicerent, *when such a throng were
throwing stones.* **is cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent,** *this
person succeeded in inducing the community to leave their territory.*

473. (1072.) The verb sometimes agrees with an appositive explain-
ing the subject, or with a substantive in the predicate : as,

Coriolī oppidum captum, *Corioli town was taken.* **summa omnium
fuērunt ad mīlia** CCCLXVIII, *the grand total was about three hundred and
sixty-eight thousand.*

474. (1073.) If the subjects are of different persons, the first person
is preferred to the second or the third, and the second to the third : as,

sī tū et Tullia, lūx nostra, valētis, ego et suāvissimus Cicerō valēmus,
if you and Tullia, our sunbeam, are well, darling Cicero and I are well.

(B.)   OF THE NOUN

(1) THE SUBSTANTIVE

475. (1077.) A substantive which explains another
substantive referring to the same thing is put in the
same case.

This applies to the substantive used as appositive, or predicate. Appositive : **quid dīcam dē thēsaurō rērum omnium, memoriā?** *what shall I say of that universal storehouse, the memory?* **duo fulmina nostrī imperiī, Cn. et P. Scīpiōnēs,** *the two thunderbolts of our realm, the Scipios, Gnaeus and Publius.* Predicate : **īra furor brevis est,** *wrath is a madness brief.*

<div align="center">(2.) THE ADJECTIVE</div>

476. (1082.) An adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, agrees with its substantive in number, gender, and case : as,

vir bonus, *a good man,* **bona uxor,** *a good wife,* **oleum bonum,** *good oil.* **Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs,** *Gaul, including everything under the name, is divided into three parts.*

477. (1083.) An adjective or participle, either attributive or predicate, sometimes takes the number and gender of the persons or things implied in the substantive : as,

pars subeuntium obrutī, pars cōnfīxī, *a part of those who came up were crushed, a part were run through.* **Samnītium caesī tria mīlia ducentī,** *of the Samnites were slain three thousand two hundred.*

478. (1087.) A predicate adjective or participle referring to two or more substantives is usually in the plural ; its gender is determined as follows :

479. (1088.) If the substantives denote persons of the same gender, that gender is used ; if they denote persons of different gender, the masculine is used : as,

venēnō absūmptī Hannibal et Philopoemēn, *it was by poison that Hannibal and Philopoemen were taken off.* **quam prīdem pater mihī et māter mortuī essent,** *how long my father and my mother had been dead.*

480. (1089.) If the substantives denote things, and are of different genders, the neuter plural is used; also commonly when they are feminines denoting things : as,

mūrus et porta dē caelō tācta erant, *the wall and town-gate had been struck by lightning.* **īra et avāritia imperiō potentiōra erant,** *hot blood and greed proved stronger than authority.*

481. (1090.) If the substantives denote both persons and things, either the gender of the substantives denoting persons is used, or the neuter : as,

<div align="center">115</div>

et rēx rēgiaque clāssis ūnā profectī, *the king too and the king's fleet set sail in his company.*   inimīca inter sē līberam cīvitātem et rēgem, *that a free state and a monarch were irreconcilable things.*

482. (1093.) A neuter adjective or pronoun is sometimes used as a substantive in the predicate (487) : as,

trīste lupus stabulīs, *a baleful thing the wolf for folds.*

483. (1094.) A demonstrative, determinative, or relative pronoun used substantively takes the number and gender of the substantive it represents; the case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands : as,

erant peditēs, quōs dēlēgerant ; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur ; ad eōs sē recipiēbant ; hī concurrēbant, *there were foot-soldiers whom they had picked out ; with these men they kept company in action ; upon them they would fall back ; these people would always rally.*

484. (1095.) Sometimes, however, the number and gender of these pronouns are determined by the sense, and not by the form of the substantive represented : as,

equitātum omnem praemittit, quī videant, *he sends all the horse ahead, to see.*   Domitius Massiliam pervenit atque ab iīs receptus urbī praeficitur, *Domitius arrived at Massilia, and was received by the people and put in charge of the town.*

485. (1096.) A pronoun representing two or more substantives sometimes takes the number and gender of the nearest.   But usually it is plural, and its gender is determined like that of an adjective (478.)

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE

(A.) USE OF THE NOUN

NUMBER AND GENDER

486. (1100.) A substantive or adjective denoting a person is often used in the singular as representative of a class, particularly when two persons are contrasted : as,

sī tabulam dē naufrāgiō stultus adripuerit, extorquēbitne eam sapiēns ? *if a fool has seized a plank from a wreck, will the sage twitch it away ?*

487. (1101.) The neuter singular of certain adjectives is used as an abstract substantive.

These adjectives have commonly stems in **-o-**, and are often used in the partitive genitive. Such are: **bonum, malum; rēctum; vērum, falsum; iūstum, iniūstum; simile,** etc.

488. (1104.) The masculine plural of many adjectives is used substantively to denote a class.

Such are: **bonī,** *the good, patriots;* **improbī,** *the wicked, the dangerous classes;* **doctī, indoctī; piī, impiī,** and the like.

489. (1106.) The neuter plural of adjectives of all degrees of comparison is very often used as a substantive.

Such adjectives are usually in the nominative or accusative, and may have a pronoun, a numeral, or an adjective, agreeing with them. In English the singular is often preferred. Such are: **bona, mala; vēra, falsa; haec,** *this;* **omnia,** *everything;* **haec omnia,** *all this,* etc., etc.

CASE

The Nominative

490. (1113–1117.) The nominative is principally used as the subject or predicate noun of a verb (455, 460). Besides this use, the nominative occurs in addresses (491); also in titles and exclamations: as,

M. Tullī Cicerōnis de Fātō Liber, *Cicero, Fate, in One Book.* **ēn Priamus,** *lo, Priam here.*

THE VOCATIVE NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE PROPER

491. (1118.) The vocative nominative is used when a person or thing is addressed: as,

quō ūsque tandem abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? *in heaven's name, how long, Catiline, wilt trifle with our patience?*

492. (1119.) Masculine stems in **-o-** commonly use the special form for the second person singular called the vocative (126): as,

urbem, urbem, mī Rūfe, cole, *stick to town, dear Rufus, yes, to town.* But the vocative nominative is sometimes used even of **-o-** stems: as, **audī tū, populus Albānus,** *hear thou, the people of Alba.*

117

493. (1122.) In verse the vocative is occasionally used even in the predicate : as, **quō moritūre ruis?** *whither, on death intent, fliest thou?* **quibus, Hector, ab ōrīs exspectāte venīs?** *out of what limboes, Hector, dost thou gladly welcomed come?*

494. (1123.) The vocative nominative or vocative proper is some-times accompanied by **ō**, or by other interjections, but only in impas-sioned addresses : as, **ō fōrtūnāte adulēscēns,** *oh thou thrice blest youth.*

The Accusative

495. (1124.) The accusative is used primarily with verbs, or with expressions equivalent to verbs. The relations expressed by the accusative are all of one general kind; but they vary somewhat, according to the nature of the verb.

496. (1128–1131.) The accusative is sometimes used with adjectives denoting extent (513), and often with prepositions (659).

THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT

497. (1132.) The object of a verb is put in the ac-cusative : as,

(*a.*) **oppida sua omnia incendunt,** *they set all their towns afire.* (*b.*) **duās fossās perdūxit,** *he made two trenches.* This accusative is, as may be seen above, either (*a.*) receptive, i. e. existing independently of the action of the verb, and only affected or apprehended by it; or (*b.*) of product, i. e. produced by the action of the verb.

498. (1133.) Verbs thus used with an object are said to be *used transitively.* Such verbs may also be used intransitively, that is, without an object, when stress is put on the action merely : thus,

Transitively : **tū mē amās, ego tē amō,** *thou lovest me, and I love thee.* Intransitively : **amō,** *I'm in love.*

499. (1134.) Some verbs, in addition to the accusative, often take an infinitive also : thus, **eum vident sedēre,** *they see him sit, they see that he is sitting.* Here the accusative **eum,** originally the object, *they see him,* becomes at the same time the subject of the new statement appended,

sedēre, *sit*, thus giving rise to the construction known as the *accusative with the infinitive.*

500. (1137.) Many verbs ordinarily used intransitively, particularly verbs of motion, have a transitive use when compounded with a preposition.

Such prepositions are, **ad, circum, in, per, praeter, trāns,** and some others : as, **plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant,** *a good many took their stand round a few.* **Caesar omnem agrum Pīcēnum percurrit,** *Caesar runs over the whole Picene territory.* **flūmen trānsiērunt,** *they crossed the river.*

501. (1138.) A few verbs with a transitive use have, when compounded with **trāns,** besides the accusative of the object, a second accusative of the thing to which the preposition refers : as, **Caesar funditōrēs pōntem trādūcit,** *Caesar takes the slingers over the bridge.* In the passive, the accusative connected with the preposition is sometimes retained : as, **Apollōniam praetervehuntur,** *they sail by Apollonia.*

502. (1139.) Verbs of weeping and wailing, and some other verbs of feeling, which commonly have an intransitive use, sometimes have a transitive use with an accusative : as,

mātrōnae eum lūxērunt, *the married women wore mourning for him.* **maereō cāsum ēius modī,** *I cannot help showing my grief over a misfortune of such a kind.* Such verbs are **fleō,** *weep,* **gemō,** *wail,* **doleō,** *am distressed,* **lūgeō,** *mourn,* **maereō,** *betray sadness,* **horreō,** *shudder,* etc., etc.

THE EMPHASIZING OR DEFINING ACCUSATIVE

503. (1140.) The meaning of a verb, even of one ordinarily intransitive, may be emphasized or more exactly defined by an accusative of kindred derivation added. This is commonly called the Cognate Accusative.

Seldom without an adjective : as, **vidē nē facinus faciās,** *mind you don't do a deed,* i. e. a misdeed. Commonly with an adjective : as, **facinus memorābile fēcistis,** *you have done a deed well worth mentioning.* **mīrum atque īnscītum somniāvī somnium,** *a strange and silly dream dreamed I.*

504. (1141.) The verb sometimes has an accusative of kindred

meaning, but of different derivation : as, **ut vīvās aetātem miser,** *that thou mayst live thy days in woe.*

505. (1142.) The neuter singular accusative of a descriptive adjective is used, particularly by the poets, to denote manner : as, **suāve rubēns hyacinthus,** *sweet-blushing hyacinth.* **cūr tam cernis acūtum ?** *why dost thou see so sharp?*   The plural is not so common : as, **acerba tuēns,** *with savage looks.*

506. (1143.) Some verbs of smell and of taste have an accusative defining what the smell or the taste is : as, **nōn omnēs possunt olere unguenta exōtica,** *not every man can of imported ointments reek.*

507. (1144.) Any verb or verbal expression may be defined in a general way by the neuter accusative of a pronoun or of an enumerative word : as,

id gaudeō, *I'm glad of that.* **cētera adsentior Crassō,** *on all the other points I agree with Crassus.* So also **quod,** *for which, on account of which,* **aliquid, nihil,** and particularly **quid,** *why, in what respect, what,* or *what . . . for :* as, **quid vēnistī,** *why art thou come ?* **quid tibī obstō,** *wherein do I stand in your way ?*

508. (1145.) The accusative of an appellative (5) is rarely used adverbially : as, **māximam partem lacte vīvunt,** *they live on milk the most part,* i. e. *chiefly.* Prepositional expressions are commoner : as, **māgnā ex parte,** *principally.*

509. (1146.) The accusative sometimes qualifies a substantive as an attribute, chiefly in a few set expressions : as, **ōrātiōnēs aut aliquid id genus,** *speeches or something that kind.* **cum id aetātis fīliō,** *with a son of that age.*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE PART CONCERNED

510. (1147.) Poets use the accusative to express the part concerned, especially a part of the human body : as,

tremit artūs, *he shivers in his limbs.* **ōs umerōsque deō similis,** *in face and shoulders like a god.*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE THING PUT ON

511. (1148.) The accusative is used with reflexive verbs in poetry to denote the thing put on : as,

comantem Androgeī galeam induitur, *Androgeus' high-haired helm he dons.* **exuviās indūtus Achillī,** *clad in Achilles' spoils.*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXCLAMATION

512. (1149.) The accusative is used in exclamations.

fōrtūnātum Nīcobūlum, *lucky man, that Nicobulus!* **testīs ēgregiōs,** *mighty fine witnesses!* sometimes with an interjection: as, **ō imperā-tōrem probum,** *oh what a good commander!*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF SPACE AND TIME

513. (1151.) Extent of space or duration of time is denoted by the accusative: as,

trīduī viam prōgressī, *having advanced three days' journey.* **aggerem lātum pedēs CCCXXX, altum pedēs LXXX exstrūxērunt,** *they built up a mound three hundred and thirty feet wide, and eighty feet high.* **mā-trōnae annum lūxērunt,** *the married women wore mourning a year.* **ūndēvīgintī annōs nātus erat,** *he was nineteen years old.* Sometimes **per** is added: as, **lūdī per decem diēs factī sunt,** *games were celebrated ten days long.*

514. (1154.) The accusative is used with **abhinc, ago**: as, **quaestor fuistī abhinc annōs quattuordecim,** *you were a quaestor fourteen years ago.*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE AIM OF MOTION

515. (1157.) Proper names of towns and of little islands or peninsulas are put in the accusative to denote the aim with expressions of motion: as,

Labiēnus Lutetiam proficīscitur, *Labienus starts for Lutetia.* **Leuca-dem vēnimus,** *we came to Leucas.* **nocturnus introitus Zmyrnam,** *the entrance into Smyrna by night.*

516. (1159.) An appellative **urbem** or **oppidum** accompanying the ac-cusative of a town name is usually preceded by **in** or **ad**: as, **ad urbem Fīdēnās tendunt,** *they make for the city of Fidenae.* **Iugurtha Thalam pervēnit, in oppidum māgnum,** *Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a large town.*

517. (1160.) When merely "motion towards" or "nearness" is meant, **ad** is used: as, **mīles ad Capuam profectus sum,** *I went to the war as a private, to the region round about Capua.*

518. (1161.) In general the accusative of country names is preceded by **in** or **ad,** as are also appellatives (5) regularly in prose; but in poetry, even appellatives without a preposition are common.

519. (1162.) The accusatives **domum, domōs, rūs,** and **forās** are used like proper names of towns: as,

equitēs domum contendērunt, *the cavalry hurried home.* **rūs ībō,** *I shall go out of town.* **effūgī forās,** *I ran out of doors.*

520. (1164.) The accusative **domum** or **domōs** sometimes has an attribute, usually a possessive pronoun: as, **alius alium domōs suās invītant,** *they invite each other to their homes.* **cum domum rēgis dēvertissēs,** *when you went to stay at the king's palace.* The preposition in is sometimes used when the attribute is a genitive, and commonly so when it is any adjective but a possessive pronoun.

TWO ACCUSATIVES COMBINED

OBJECT AND PREDICATE

521. (1167.) Many verbs may take two accusatives, an object and a predicate.

Such are verbs signifying *make, keep, choose, name* or *call, have, think, recognize* or *find, show oneself,* etc., etc.: as, **eum certiōrem faciunt,** *they let him know.* **Ancum Mārcium rēgem populus creāvit,** *the people made Ancus Marcius king.* **Duellium " Bellium " nōmināvērunt,** *Duellius they named " Bellius."* In the passive both the object and the predicate become nominatives: as, **Caesar certior factus est,** *Caesar was informed.*

PERSON AND THING

522. (1169.) Some verbs of teaching and hiding, demanding and questioning, may take two accusatives, one of a person and one of a thing.

The commonest of these verbs are **doceō** and its compounds, and **cēlō; flāgitō, ōrō, poscō,** and **rogō, interrogō. quid tē litterās doceam ?** *why should I teach you your A B C's ?* **nōn tē cēlāvī sermōnem T. Ampiī,** *I have not kept you in the dark about the talk with Ampius.* **interim cōtīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre,** *meantime Caesar every day a dunning the Aeduans for the grain.*

᠂ **523.** (1171.) In the passive the person becomes the subject, and the accusative, particularly of a neuter pronoun or adjective, is retained : as, **omnīs mīlitiae artīs ēdoctus fuerat,** *he had been thoroughly taught all the arts of war.*   **fuerant hōc rogātī,** *they had been asked for this.*

524. (1172.) Verbs of wishing, reminding, inducing, and accusing, and some others, also sometimes take an accusative of the person and one of the thing.

Such are **moneō** and its compounds, **cōgō, accūsō.** The thing is usually the neuter of a pronoun : as, **illud mē admonēs,** *you put me in mind of that.*   **id cōgit omnīs,** *he forces it upon all.*

The Dative

525. (1175.) The dative denotes that for or to which a thing is or is done, and either accompanies single words, such as verbs, adjectives, sometimes adverbs, rarely substantives, or serves to modify the entire sentence.   It has two principal uses.

526. (1177.) The ESSENTIAL COMPLEMENT is a dative of the person or thing added to an idea which is felt as incomplete without the dative (529).

Thus, **pāret,** *he is obedient,* is a statement which is felt as incomplete without a dative added to denote what it is he is obedient to, in the sentence **pāret senātuī,** *he is obedient to the senate.*   But when stress is put on the action merely, without reference to its bearing, such a verb may be used without a dative : as, **pāret,** *he is obedient, he yields obedience.*

527. (1178.) The OPTIONAL COMPLEMENT, that is, the dative of interest, advantage, or disadvantage, adds something to an idea that is already complete in itself (537).

Thus, **carmina cantō,** *I chant verses,* is a statement entirely complete in itself ; it may be modified or not, at option, by a dative, thus : **carmina virginibus puerīsque cantō,** *verses for maids and boys I chant.*

528. (1179.) The dative of certain substantives is used predicatively (547).

THE ESSENTIAL COMPLEMENT
The Dative with Verbs

529. (1180.) Many verbs require a dative to complete their meaning.

With Verbs of Intransitive Use

530. (1181.) Many verbs of intransitive use, particularly such as denote a state, disposition, feeling, or quality, take the dative: as,

quodne vōbīs placeat, displiceat mihī? *shall that which pleases you, displeasing be to me?* **īgnōscās velim huic festīnātiōnī meae,** *please excuse haste.* **huic legiōnī Caesar cōnfīdēbat māximē,** *Caesar trusted this legion most of all.* **an C. Trebōniō ego persuāsī?** *was it I that brought conviction to Trebonius?* In the passive, such verbs are used impersonally, the dative remaining: as, **hīs persuādērī nōn poterat,** *these could not be persuaded.*

531. (1182.) This dative is used with such verbs or verbal expressions as mean *am pleasing* or *displeasing, helpful* or *injurious, command, yield,* or *am obedient, am friendly, partial,* or *opposed; spare, pardon, threaten, trust, advise, persuade, happen, meet.* But the English translation is not a safe guide: many of the verbs used with a dative are represented transitively in English; and some verbs of the meanings above are used transitively in Latin: as, **dēlectō, iuvō, laedō,** etc., etc.

532. (1188 f.) Many verbs of intransitive use compounded with a preposition take a dative connected in sense with the preposition: as,

omnibus adfuit hīs pūgnīs Dolābella, *Dolabella was on hand in all these battles.* **pontō nox incubat ātra,** *over the deep, night broodeth black.* **cōgnitiōnibus dē Chrīstiānīs interfuī numquam,** *I have never been to any of the trials of the Christians.* The prepositions are chiefly **ad, ante, com-, in, inter, ob, prae, sub,** or **super.**

With Verbs of Transitive Use

533. (1192.) Many verbs of transitive use take the dative: as,

ēī fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat, *he gives this person his own daughter in marriage.* **decima legiō ēī grātiās ēgit,** *the tenth legion gave him*

thanks. **huic fert subsidium Puliō,** *to him Pulio brings aid.* **reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt,** *the rest betook themselves to flight.* **equitēs imperat cīvitātibus,** *he issues orders to the communities for horse.*

534. (1194 f.) Many verbs of transitive use compounded with a preposition take a dative connected in sense with the preposition: as,

timōrem bonīs iniēcistis, *you have struck terror into the hearts of patriots.* **nēminem huic praeferō,** *there is nobody I put before him.* **hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit,** *he put Labienus over the winter-quarters.* The prepositions are **circum, dē, ex, post,** or those named in 532.

535. (1199.) **dōnō** and **circumdǫ,** with some other compounds, admit either the dative of the person or thing and accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person or thing and ablative of the thing: as, **praedam mīlitibus dōnat,** *he presents the booty to the soldiers.* **scrībam tuum ānulō dōnāstī,** *you presented your clerk with a ring.*

THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

536. (1200.) The dative with many adjectives and some adverbs denotes that to which the quality is directed.

Such have the meaning of *useful, necessary, fit, easy, agreeable, known, near, belonging, friendly, faithful, like,* and most of their opposites: as, **vēr ūtile silvīs,** *the spring is good for woods.* **est senātōrī necessārium nōsse rem pūblicam,** *for a senator it is indispensable to be conversant with government.* **convenienter nātūrae vīvere,** *to live in touch with nature.*

THE OPTIONAL COMPLEMENT

537. (1205.) The dative of a person or thing interested, benefited, harmed, may be added at option to almost any verb: as,

cōnservāte parentī fīlium, parentem fīliō, *save the son for the father, the father for the son.* **mea domus tibī patet, mihī clausa est,** *the very house I own is open for you, is shut upon me.*

538. (1207.) The dative is often added to the entire sentence, where either a genitive or a possessive pronoun limiting a substantive might be used.

In such cases the dative expresses interest, advantage, or disadvantage, while the genitive would simply indicate the owner or the object: as, **trānsfīgitur scūtum Puliōnī,** *unfortunately for Pulio, his shield gets pierced through and through.* **mīlitantī in Hispāniā pater ĕī moritur,** *while serving in Spain he had the misfortune to lose his father.* **nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit,** *it dashed the hopes of our soldiers.*

539. (1209.) Verbs of warding off sometimes take a dative, especially in poetry, also those of robbing and ridding: as, **sōlstitium pecorī dēfendite,** *the summer's heat keep distant for the flock.* **torquem dētrāxit hostī,** *he pulled a torque away from his enemy.*

540. (1210.) With verbs of motion the dative of the person interested denotes in poetry the end of motion also: as, **multōs Danaüm dēmittimus Orcō,** *we send down many a Danaan for the nether king.* So also the dative of personified words of place: as, it **clāmor caelō,** *up goes a shout for heaven,* i. e. heaven hears a shout.

THE EMOTIONAL DATIVE

541. (1211.) The dative of the personal pronoun is often used with expressions of emotion, interest, surprise, or derision: as,

quid mihī Celsus agit? *how fares me Celsus?* **at tibī repente, cum minimē exspectārem, vēnit ad mē Canīnius māne,** *but bless you, sir, when I least dreamt of it, who should drop in on me all at once but Canīnius, bright and early.*

THE DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR

542. (1212.) The dative is used with forms of **sum** to denote the possessor: as,

est hominī cum deō similitūdō, *man has a resemblance to god.* **an nescīs longās rēgibus esse manūs?** *dost possibly not know kings have long arms?* So also with the compounds **absum, dēsum, supersum:** as, **hōc ūnum Caesarī dēfuit,** *this was all Caesar lacked.*

543. (1213.) With **mihī est nōmen,** the name is put either in the dative or in the nominative: as, **mihī nōmen est Iūliō,** or **mihī nōmen est Iūlius,** *my name is Julius.*

544. (1215.) With a gerundive, the dative of the possessor denotes the person who has the action to do; this is often called the dative of the agent. See 991.

545. (1216.) This dative is sometimes used with the perfect participle, and the tenses formed with it : as, **carmina nūlla mihī sunt scrīpta,** *no poetry have I ready made.* Rarely with passives of the present system : as, **nūlla placēre diū nec vīvere carmina possunt, quae scrībuntur aquae pōtōribus,** *no verse can take or be longlived that by teetotallers is writ.*

THE DATIVE OF RELATION

546. (1217.) The dative may denote the person viewing or judging : as,

eris mihī māgnus Apollō, *thou shalt to me the great Apollo be.* Participles are often used to denote the person viewing or judging : as, **est urbe ēgressīs tumulus,** *there is, as you get out of town, a mound.*

THE PREDICATIVE DATIVE
THE DATIVE OF TENDENCY OR RESULT

547. (1219.) Certain datives are used with a form of **sum** to denote what a thing tends to, proves, or is. This dative is generally accompanied by a dative of the person interested (537): as,

auxiliō īs fuit, *he was a help to them.* **potestne bonum cuiquam malō esse?** *can good prove bad for any human being?* **rēs et fōrtūnae tuae mihī māximae cūrae sunt,** *your money-matters are an all-absorbing interest to me.*

THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE OR INTENTION

548. (1223.) A few datives are used to denote what a thing is intended to be. This dative is generally accompanied by a dative of the person interested (537).

So **dōnō** and **mūnerī** : as, **centum bovēs mīlitibus dōnō dedit,** *he gave the soldiers a hundred oxen as a present.* Also **auxiliō, praesidiō,** and **subsidiō,** used of military operations, chiefly with verbs of motion : as, **iī, quī praesidiō contrā castra erant relīctī, subsidiō suīs iērunt,** *the men that had been left as a protection against the camp, went as a reinforcement to their own side.* **receptuī** is also used in military language to denote purpose : as, **Caesar receptuī canī iussit,** *Caesar ordered the retreat sounded.*

The Genitive

549. (1226.) The genitive is principally used with nouns, less frequently with verbs. Sometimes even when it seems to be dependent on a verb, it really depends on a substantive understood, or on a noun virtually contained or implied in the verb. Some verbs require an accusative also, in addition to the genitive.

THE GENITIVE WITH SUBSTANTIVES

550. (1227.) A substantive is often limited by another substantive in the genitive.

551. (1228.) The limited substantive is often omitted, when it is obvious from the context: as, **ventum erat ad Vestae,** sc. **aedem,** *to Vesta's were we come,* i. e. to her temple. **aberam bīduī,** sc. **iter,** *I was two days distant.* Usually so, when it is expressed with another genitive, which generally precedes: as, **quis est, quī possit cōnferre vītam Trebōniī cum Dolābellae?** *who is there that can compare the life of Trebonius with Dolabella's?*

552. (1231.) The relations expressed by the limiting genitive vary very much according to the context. These relations may be put in classes, as below. But it must be remembered that as the genitive connects substantives in a loose way, the same construction may sometimes be referred to more than one head.

THE GENITIVE OF THE SUBJECT, CAUSE, ORIGIN, OR OWNER

553. (1232.) The genitive is used to denote that which does the action, or which causes, originates, or possesses the object designated by the substantive it limits: as,

metus hostium, *the fear of the enemy,* i. e. which they feel. **adventus Caesaris,** *the arrival of Caesar.* **bellum Venetōrum,** *the war with the Venetans.* **Canachī sīgna,** *statues by Canachus.* **Cupīdinis sīgnum,** *the statue representing Cupid.* **hūius sīgnīs,** *with statues belonging to this man.* **Cannārum pūgna,** *the battle of Cannae.* **prīdiē ēius diēī,** *the day before that day* (661).

554. (1233.) Instead of the genitive, an adjective is often used to express such relations: as, **odium paternum,** *the hatred felt by his father.* **bellō Cassiānō,** *in the war with Cassius.* **intrā domesticōs parietēs,** *within the walls of our houses.* **pūgna Cannēnsis,** *the battle of Cannae.*

555. (1234 f.) The possessive pronoun is regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of a personal or reflexive pronoun: as,

mea domus, *my own house.* **in tuā quādam epistolā,** *in a letter of yours.* A word in apposition with the possessive pronoun is put in the genitive: as, **meā ūnīus operā,** *by my sole instrumentality.* **ad vestram omnium caedem,** *for the murder of you all.* So particularly **ipse, omnis, sōlus,** and **ūnus.**

556. (1236.) The genitive is often used predicatively with verbs meaning *am, belong, become, make, seem, am accounted,* etc., etc.: as,

hīc versus Plautī nōn est, hīc est, *this line is not Plautus's, this one is.* **neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī,** *and that he did not think Gaul was any more Ariovistus's than it was the Romans'.*

557. (1237.) The possessive genitive of a person or of an abstract is particularly common when the subject of the verb is an infinitive or sentence: as,

erat āmentis, cum aciem vidērēs, pācem cōgitāre, *it was a madman's act, dreaming of peace when you saw the troops in battalia.* **nōn est pudōris meī, mē prōpūgnātōrem P. Scīpiōnis profitērī,** *it is not in keeping with my delicacy to set up as the champion of Scipio.*

THE GENITIVE OF QUALITY

558. (1239.) The genitive with an adjective in agreement is used to denote quality, either attributively or predicatively: as,

Attributively: **māgnī ponderis saxa,** *stones of great weight.* **summae spei adulēscentēs,** *young men of high promise.* **vāllō pedum IX,** *with a nine foot palisade.* Predicatively: **māgnae habitus auctōritātis,** *passing for a man of great influence.* **flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium,** *the depth of the river was about three feet.* The genitive of quality resembles the ablative of quality (643); the two are sometimes combined:

as, **hominem māximī corporis terribilīque faciē,** *a man of gigantic frame and with an awe-inspiring presence.*   But the genitive is common in designations of size and number.

THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

559. (1241.) The partitive genitive denotes a whole of which the limited substantive denotes a part.   There are two kinds of partitive genitive, the numerical and the quantitative.

560. (1242.) The numerical partitive is a plural or a collective, limiting a word expressing part of the number : as,

pars equitātūs, *part of the cavalry.*   **multae istārum arborum,** *many of the trees you see there.*   **nēmō nostrum,** *not one of us.*   **hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae,** *of all these the stoutest fighters are the Belgians.*

561. (1244.) The plurals **tot, totidem,** and **quot,** are not used partitively, and **omnēs** and **cūnctī** only so by poets and late prose writers. **plērīque** is used either way, in agreement, or with the genitive.

562. (1245.) The numerical partitive is exceptionally used in poetry with the positive of a descriptive adjective : as, **sāncte deōrum,** *thou holy of the gods.*

563. (1246.) Instead of the numerical partitive, a prepositional expression with **ante, inter,** or **in,** or with **ex** or **dē,** is sometimes used : as, **ante aliōs acceptissimus,** *most welcome before others.*   So particularly **quīdam** and **ūnus, duo, trēs,** with **ex** or **dē** : as, **quīdam ex hīs,** *one of these.*   **ūnus dē multīs,** *one of the common herd.*

564. (1247 f.) The quantitative partitive is usually a singular, limiting a neuter singular word denoting amount.   The limited word is either a nominative, or an accusative without a preposition : as,

multum aestātis, *much of the summer.*   **quam minimum spatiī,** *as little time as possible.*   **id aetātis,** *at that time of life.*   **quid causae est ?** *what earthly reason is there?*   Such neuters are : **multum, plūrimum, amplius, plūs, paulum, minus, minimum, tantum, quantum.**   Furthermore, **id, hōc, nihil ;** also **partim, parum,** and **satis.**

565. (1249.) A few adjectives of place and time indicating a particular part of an object, are commonly used in immediate agreement with their substantives : as,

130

summus mōns, *the highest part of the mountain,* or *the mountain-top.*
extrēmā hieme, mediā aestāte, *at the end of the winter, in midsummer.*
Such are: prīmus, intimus, medius, extrēmus, postrēmus, ūltimus, summus, īnfimus, īmus, reliquus.

566. (1250.) The limiting genitive is often the neuter singular of an adjective used substantively : as,

aliquid bonī, *something good.* numquid tandem novī? *nothing new, pray?* This use is ordinarily confined to stems in -o-.

567. (1253.) Some appellatives of place are put in the genitive with adverbs of place : as, ubinam gentium? *where in the world?* nūsquam gentium, *nowhere in the world.*

THE GENITIVE OF DEFINITION

568. (1255.) The genitive is used to define that of which a thing consists : as,

māgna multitūdō perditōrum hominum, *a perfect swarm of desperadoes.* innumerābile pondus aurī, *a weight of gold too great to count.*

569. (1256.) The genitive of an explicit word containing the leading idea is sometimes used to define a more general word : as,

cōnfīsus mūnītiōne fossae, *relying on the defensive works in the shape of a moat.* Particularly with the words vōx, nōmen : as, haec vōx voluptātis, *this word " pleasure."* nōmen amīcitiae, *the name " friendship."*

570. (1257.) The genitive of definition is very common with causā, less common with grātiā, to define what the motive or cause is : as, amīcitiae causā, *from motives of friendship.* vestrā causā, *for your sake.* 𝒵
honestātis amplitūdinisque grātiā, *in compliment to their respectability and high social standing.*

THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

571. (1260.) The objective genitive denotes the object of the action expressed in the limited substantive : as,

metus hostium, *the fear of the enemy,* i. e. which is felt towards them. vēnditiō bonōrum, *sale of the goods.* lūctū fīliī, *from grief for his son.* miserrima est contentiō honōrum, *a scramble for office is a pitiful thing.*

572. (1261.) Instead of the objective genitive, a prepositional expression is sometimes used with greater precision : as,

metus ā vī atque īrā deōrum, *fear of the might and wrath of the gods.*
So especially the accusative, usually denoting a person, with **in, ergā,** or
adversus, combined with substantives denoting feeling : as, **vestra ergā
mē voluntās,** *your good-will towards me.*

THE GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

573. (1263.) The genitive is used with many adjec-
tives to denote the object.

Such are chiefly adjectives meaning (*a.*) *desirous,* (*b.*) *knowing,* or *re-
membering,* (*c.*) *participating, controlling,* or *guilty,* (*d.*) *full,* and most
of their opposites : as, (*a.*) **aurī cupidus,** *eager for gold.* (*b.*) **rēī mīlitāris
perītissimus,** *a master of the art military.* **immemor beneficiōrum,
memor patriae,** *forgetful of kindness, never forgetting his country.* (*c.*)
praedae participēs, *sharing in the booty.* (*d.*) **fōns plēnissimus piscium,**
a fountain swarming with fish.

574. (1266.) The genitive of the object is often used with present
participles which express permanent condition : as, **semper appetentēs
glōriae praeter cēterās gentīs fuistis,** *you have always been more hungry
for glory than any other nation.* In Caesar seldom : as, **fugiēns labōris,**
apt to shirk exertion.

575. (1270.) In poetry and late prose, the genitive is used very freely
with many adjectives of various meanings, often merely to indicate what
they apply to : as,

aevī mātūrus Acestēs, *Acestes, ripe in years.* **integer vītae sceleris-
que pūrus,** *the man unspotted in his life and clean of sin.* **fessī rērum,** *in
travail spent.*

THE GENITIVE WITH VERBS

VERBS OF VALUING

576. (1271.) A few neuter adjectives of quantity are put in
the genitive with verbs of valuing to denote the amount of
estimation ; such genitives are :

māgnī, plūris, plūrimī ; parvī, minōris, minimī ; tantī, quantī.

The verbs with which these genitives are used are **aestimō, dūcō,
faciō, habeō, pendō, putō,** and **sum ;** rarely **exīstimō :** as **māgnī opera
ēius aestimāta est,** *his services were rated high.* **est mihī tantī,** *it is well
worth my while.* **quantī is ā cīvibus suīs fieret īgnōrābās ?** *did not you
know how the man was prized by his own townsmen ?*

577. (1273.) With **aestimō**, the ablatives **magnō** and **permagnō** are sometimes used: as, **quid ? tū ista permagnō aestimās ?** *tell me, do you rate that sort of thing very high yourself ?* Compare 653.

578. (1274.) The genitives **tantī** and **quantī, plūris** and **minōris** are also used with verbs of buying and selling, hiring and letting, and costing. But other words are put in the ablative with these verbs : see 652. For **magnī**, etc., with **rēfert** and **interest**, see 581.

THE VERBS rēfert AND interest

579. (1277.) With **rēfert** and **interest**, a first or second person concerned is denoted by the possessive pronoun forms **meā, tuā, nostrā, vestrā** ; and the third person reflexive by **suā** : as,

quid id rēfert meā ? *what's that to me ?* nōn nostrā magis quam vestrā rēfert vōs nōn rebellāre, *it is not more for our interest than for your own that you should not make war again.* vestrā hōc māximē interest, *this is of vital moment to you.*

580. (1278.) With **interest**, a third person or thing concerned is denoted by the genitive. Also with **rēfert**, a few times : as,

quid ēius intererat ? *what concern was it of his ?* interesse rēī pūblicae sē cum Pompēiō colloquī, *that it was of importance to the common weal that he should have a parley with Pompey.* faciundum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam suā rētulisse vidērētur, *that he must do something which should seem more for the other side's good than his own.*

581. (1279.) The matter of concern is expressed by a sentence or infinitive, or by a neuter pronoun. The degree of concern is expressed by an adverb, as **magnopere**, by a neuter accusative, as **multum**, or by a genitive of estimation, **magnī, permagnī, plūris, parvī, tantī, quantī** (576).

JUDICIAL VERBS

582. (1280.) Verbs of accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting, take a genitive of the charge: as,

C. Verrem īnsimulat avāritiae, *he charges Verres with avarice.* prōditiōnis damnātus est, *he was convicted of treason.* Pollis pecūniae pūblicae est condemnātus, *Pollis was condemned for embezzlement of government money.* māiestātis absolūti sunt permultī, *a good many were*

acquitted of high treason. With this genitive, an ablative, **crīmine, iūdiciō, nōmine,** or **lēge,** is sometimes expressed (645).

583. (1281.) The charge is sometimes denoted by a prepositional construction : as, **dē pecūniīs repetundīs,** *of extortion,* **dē vī,** *of an act of violence.* For the neuter accusative, see 524.

584. (1282.) The penalty also is sometimes denoted by the genitive, sometimes by the ablative.

IMPERSONAL VERBS OF MENTAL DISTRESS

585. (1283.)   A genitive of the thing, commonly with an accusative of the person, is used with five impersonals of mental distress :

<div align="center">

miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet: as,
</div>

frātris mē pudet pigetque, *my brother stirs my shame and my disgust.* **mī pater, mē tuī pudet,** *dear father, in thy presence I'm abashed.* **galeātum sēro duellī paenitet,** *too late, with casque on head, a combatant repenteth him of war.*

586. (1285.) The genitive is used with the personals **misereor** or **misereō,** and in poetry with **miserēscō**: as,

miserēminī sociōrum, *do take pity on your allies.* **Arcadiī miserēscite rēgis,** *take pity on the king of Arcady.*

587. (1286.) Personal verbs of desiring, loathing, admiring, and dreading, sometimes take the genitive : as, **quamquam domī cupiō, opperiar,** *although I yearn for home, I'll wait.* **iūstitiaene prius mīrer, bellīne labōrum?** *thy justice first shall I admire? thy toils in war?*

VERBS OF MEMORY

588. (1287.) The genitive is used with verbs of remembering and forgetting: as,

vīvōrum meminī, nec tamen Epicūrī licet oblīvīscī, *I remember the living, and yet it will not do for me to be forgetful of Epicurus.* **reminīscerētur incommodī populī Rōmānī,** *he had better call to mind the rebuff dealt out to Rome.*

589. (1288.) With verbs of remembering and forgetting the thing is sometimes expressed by the accusative, and regularly when it is a neuter pronoun. **meminī** takes also the accusative of a person we have known : as, **Cinnam meminī, vīdī Sūllam,** *I can remember Cinna, I have seen Sulla.* **recordor** takes the accusative much oftener than the genitive.

<div align="center">

134
</div>

590. (1289.) The ablative also with **dē** occurs with **meminī**: as, **dē pallā mementō**, *don't forget about the gown.* Likewise with **recordor**, particularly of persons: as, **recordāre dē cēterīs**, *bethink yourself about the rest of the men.*

591. (1290.) The impersonal **venit in mentem** also takes the genitive: as, **venit mihǐ Platōnis in mentem**, *Plato comes into my head.*

592. (1291.) Verbs of reminding take the accusative of a person and sometimes with it the genitive of a thing: as,

admonēbat alium egestātis, alium cupiditātis suae, *he reminded one man of his beggary, another of his greed.* Oftener, however, the thing is in the ablative with **dē**, or, if it is a neuter pronoun or adjective, in the accusative (524).

VERBS OF PARTICIPATION AND MASTERY

593. (1292.) Verbs of participation and mastery sometimes take the genitive in poetry. So, even in prose, **potior**, which usually has the ablative (646): as, **totīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant**, *they hope they can get the mastery over the whole of Gaul.* Especially with persons, or with the genitive plural **rērum**: as, **rērum potior**, *I am master of the situation,* or *I am monarch of all I survey.*

VERBS OF FULNESS AND WANT

594. (1293.) The genitive is sometimes used with verbs of filling, abounding, and lacking, as it is with the corresponding adjectives (573): as,

convīvium vīcīnōrum cōtīdiē compleō, *I fill out a dinner-party every day with neighbors.* So with **egeō** sometimes: as, **egeō cōnsiliī,** *I am in need of some advice.* So usually with **indigeō**: as, **hōc bellum indiget celeritātis,** *this war requires rapid action.* For the ablative with verbs of lacking, see 601.

595. (1294.) With verbs of separating and abstaining, the ablative is regularly used (600). But the genitive is sometimes found in poetry: as, **abstinētō īrārum calidaeque rixae,** *from bursts of rage keep thou and hot affray.*

The Ablative

596. (1296.) The ablative is used principally with verbs and their participles, or with adjectives, and consists of three cases that were originally distinct.

597. (1297.) The ABLATIVE proper denotes that from which something parts or proceeds (600).

598. (1299.) The LOCATIVE case denotes the place in, at, or on which action occurs. A few forms of the locative proper are still preserved (620). But ordinarily the locative ablative is used to denote the place where (623).

599. (1300.) The INSTRUMENTAL case denotes that by which or with which a main person or thing is attended (634).

THE ABLATIVE PROPER

THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION AND WANT, AND OF DEPARTURE

600. (1302.) Verbs of separation take an ablative of the thing from which separation takes place: as,

adhūc Q. Ligārius omnī culpā vacat, *thus far Ligarius proves devoid of any guilt.* Ītaliā prohibētur: nōn tū eum patriā prīvāre, quā caret, sed vītā vīs, *he is kept out of Italy ; you want to deprive him not of his country, from which he is debarred, but of life.* līberēmus cūrā populum Rōmānum, *let me relieve Rome of anxiety.*

601. (1303.) This ablative is used (*a.*) with such verbs as mean *abstain, am devoid of, need ;* (*b.*) with verbs used transitively, such as mean *keep off, drive away, remove, free, deprive.*

602. (1304.) A preposition, **ab** or **ex**, is often used with these verbs, and regularly when the ablative denotes a person. But **careō** and **egeō**, and **exsolvō** and **levō**, never have a preposition.

603. (1305.) With **egeō**, the genitive is sometimes used, and often with **indigeō**: see 594. Also in poetry, with verbs of abstaining and separating: see 595.

604. (1306.) The ablative of separation is sometimes used with such adjectives as **līber, nūdus, vacuus,** etc.: as, **vacuī cūrīs,** *devoid of cares.* But sometimes the genitive: see 573; sometimes also prepositional constructions.

605. (1307.) Proper names of towns and of little islands are put in the ablative with verbs of motion, to denote the place from which motion proceeds: as,

Dāmarātus fūgit Tarquiniōs Corinthō, *Damaratus ran away from Corinth to Tarquinii.* **sīgnum Carthāgine captum,** *the statue carried off from Carthage.* **Lēmnō,** *from Lemnos.* **Rōmā accēperam litterās,** *I had got a letter from Rome.*

606. (1308.) In classical Latin, town names rarely have **ab,** and chiefly of neighborhood : as, **ab Gergoviā,** *from camp at Gergovia;* or regularly with **longē** : as, **longē ā Syrācūsīs,** *far from Syracuse.*

607. (1310.) Country names regularly have a preposition : as, **ē Ciliciā dēcēdēns,** *going away from Cilicia.*

608. (1311.) The ablatives **domō** and **rūre,** and in poetry **humō,** are used like proper names of towns : as,

domō excesserant, *they had gone away from home.* **rūre rediīt uxor mea,** *my wife's come back from out of town.* **vix oculōs attollit humō,** *scarce from the ground her eyes she lifts.*

THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE, STUFF, OR MATERIAL

609. (1312.) The verb **nāscor** and participles of origin take an ablative to denote parentage or rank in life.

Such participles are : **nātus, prōgnātus,** and **ortus** ; in poetry and late prose, also **ēditus, genitus, satus** : as, **summō locō nātus,** *of high birth.* **Rōmulus deō prōgnātus,** *Romulus, sprung from a god.* **dīs genite,** *thou sired of gods.* Of a parent, **ex** is sometimes used : as, **ex mē hīc nātus nōn est,** *he's not my son;* and of remoter ancestors, **ab.** Rarely with **dē** : as, **quō dē genere gnātust Philocratēs?** *what is the parentage of Philocrates?*

610. (1314.) A substantive denoting stuff or material is generally put in the ablative with **dē** or **ex** ; thus,

pōcula ex aurō, *cups of gold.* Oftener with an auxiliary verb or participle : **scūtīs ex cortice factīs,** *with long shields made out of bark.*

611. (1315.) The ablative with forms of **faciō** and **sum** denotes that with which or to which something is done : as, **quid hōc homine faciās?** *what can you do with such a fellow?* **quid mē fīet?** *what will become of me?*

THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, INFLUENCE, OR MOTIVE

612. (1316.) The ablative is used to denote cause, influence, or motive : as,

premor lūctū, *I am bowed down with grief.* **quod ego nōn superbiā**

137

faciēbam, *I did not act thus from superciliousness, not I.* **Iovis iūssū venio**, *at Jove's behest I come.*

613. (1317.) Instead of the ablative, other constructions often occur, especially with verbs used transitively; such are:

Circumlocutions with **causā**, less frequently with **grātiā** (570).   Ablatives absolute, or participles, particularly auxiliary participles with an ablative to express cause, oftener motive, such as **captus, ductus, mōtus, perterritus**: as, **nōnnūllī pudōre adductī remanēbant,** *some stuck by from shame.*

614. (1318.) The person by whom the action of a passive verb is done, is denoted by the ablative with **ab** or **ā** (see 684).

Things or animals are sometimes represented as persons by the use of **ab**: as, **animus bene īnfōrmātus ā nātūrā,** *a soul meetly fashioned by dame nature.*

THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

615. (1320 f.) The ablative may be used with a comparative adjective, when the first of two things compared is in the nominative or the accusative.

Such an ablative is translated by *than:* as, (*a.*) **lūce sunt clāriōra nōbīs tua cōnsilia,** *your schemes are plainer to us than day.*   **illud cōgnōscēs profectō, mihī tē neque cāriōrem neque iūcundiōrem esse quemquam,** *one thing I am sure you will see, that there is nobody nearer and dearer to me than you.* **hōc mihī grātius facere nihil potes,** *you can do nothing for me more welcome than this.*

616. (1322.) In poetry, the ablative of comparison may be used with the first member of comparison in any case: as, **Lūcīlī rītū, nostrum meliōris utrōque,** *after Lucilius's way, a better man than thou or I.*

617. (1324 f.) The second member of the comparison is often introduced by **quam,** *than.*   Both members are then in the same case, or the second is the subject of a new clause: as,

tū velim exīstimēs nēminem cuiquam neque cāriōrem neque iūcundiōrem umquam fuisse quam tē mihī, *I hope you will be convinced that nobody was ever nearer and dearer to anybody than you to me.* **verba M. Varrōnis, hominis quam fuit Claudius doctiōris,** *the words of Varro, a better scholar than Claudius ever was.*

138

618. (1328.) Designations of number or extent are often qualified by **amplius, longius,** or **plūs,** *over,* or by **minus,** *under.*

The word thus qualified is put in the case which the context would require without any such qualification : as, **plūs septingentī captī,** *over seven hundred were taken prisoners.* **tēcum plūs annum vīxit,** *he lived with you over a year.*

619. (1330.) With a comparative adjective or adverb, the ablatives **opīniōne, exspectātiōne,** and **spē,** and some others, chiefly in poetry, take the place of a sentence with **quam** : as, **minōra opīniōne,** *more insignificant than is thought.* **spē omnium sērius,** *later than was generally expected.*

THE LOCATIVE

THE LOCATIVE PROPER

620. (1331.) Singular proper names of towns and of little islands are put in the locative to denote the place in or at which action occurs : as,

quid **Rōmae faciam?** *what can I do in Rome?* **Rhodī,** *at Rhodes.* **Corinthī et Karthāginī,** *at Corinth and at Carthage.* **Tīburī,** *at Tibur.* Compare 624.

621. (1337.) The locatives **domī, rūrī,** and **humī** are used like proper names of towns : as,

cēnābō domī, *I shall dine at home.* **iacēre humī,** *sleeping on bare ground.*

622. (1338 ff.) The locatives **bellī** and **mīlitiae** are sometimes used in contrast with **domī** : as, **domī bellīque, domī mīlitiaeque,** *at home and in the field.* The locative **animī,** *in soul,* is often used with verbs of suspense, doubt, and distress, and with many adjectives. Some locatives denote time when : as, **herī,** *yesterday,* **vesperī,** *at evening.*

THE ABLATIVE USED AS LOCATIVE

PLACE IN, ON, OR AT WHICH

623. (1342.) Plural proper names of towns and of little islands are put in the locative ablative to denote the place in or at which action occurs : as,

Athēnīs tenue caelum, crassum Thēbīs, *in Athens the air is thin, at*

Thebes it is thick. **locus ostenditur Capreīs,** *the place is pointed out at Capreae.*

624. (1343.) Singular proper names of towns with consonant stems are oftener put in the locative ablative than in the locative proper: as,

   adulēscentium gregēs Lacedaemone vīdimus, *we have seen the companies of young men in Lacedaemon.* **Karthāgine,** *at Carthage.* **Tībure,** *at Tibur.* Compare the examples under 620.

625. (1344.) A few general appellatives are used in the locative ablative without an attribute, to denote the place where: as, **terrā marīque,** *by land and sea;* **dextrā Pīraeus, sinistrā Corinthus,** *Piraeus on the right, Corinth on the left.* So **animō, animīs,** with verbs of feeling: as, **angor animō,** *I am distressed in soul,* or *I am heart-broken.*

626. (1345 f.) Certain appellatives, with an attribute, often denote the place where by the locative ablative; so especially **locō, locīs, parte, partibus:** as, **inīquō locō,** *on unsuitable ground.* Substantives are often used in the locative ablative with **tōtus** in agreement, to denote the place where: as, **tōtā Galliā,** *all over Gaul.* **tōtīs trepidātur castrīs,** *there is a panic all over the camp.*

627. (1347.) With country names and most appellatives, the place where is generally expressed by the ablative with **in.** But even without an attribute, the ablative alone is sometimes used, especially in poetry.

628. (1348.) The locative ablative is sometimes used with such verbs as **teneō** and **recipiō:** as, **Ariovistus exercitum castrīs continuit,** *Ariovistus kept his infantry in camp.* **oppidīs recipere,** *to receive inside their towns.*

629. (1349.) The locative ablative is used with **fīdō** and **cōnfīdō, glōrior, laetor, nītor,** and with **frētus:** as, **barbarī cōnfīsī locī nātūrā in aciē permānsērunt,** *the natives, trusting in the nature of their position, kept their stand in battle array.* **superiōribus vīctōriīs frētī,** *relying on their former victories.*

TIME AT WHICH OR TIME WITHIN WHICH

630. (1350 f.) The locative ablative is used to denote the point of time at which action occurs: as,

hieme, *in the winter*.   Generally with an attribute: as, **primō vēre**, *in the first month of spring*.   **Mārtiīs Kalendīs,** *upon the first of March*. **proxumīs comitiīs,** *at the last election*.   Especially substantives of action in -tus or -sus: as, **sōlis occāsū,** *at sunset*.   **adventū in Galliam Caesaris,** *at Caesar's arrival in Gaul*.

631. (1352.) The locative ablative is used to denote the space of time within which action occurs: as,

paucīs diēbus opus efficitur, *the job is finished up in a few days*.   **tribus hōrīs Aduātucam venīre potestis,** *in three hours you can get to Aduatuca*.

632. (1353.) The ablative of the time at or within which action occurs is sometimes accompanied by in: as, **in bellō,** *in the war*.   Especially of repeated action, in the sense of *a* or *every*, with numerals: as, **ter in annō,** *three times a year*.

633. (1355.) The ablative is exceptionally used to denote duration of time: as, **tōtā nocte continenter iērunt,** *they went on and on all night without interruption*.   Regularly, however, the accusative (513).

THE INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE

THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

634. (1356.) A few indefinite designations of military forces denote accompaniment by the ablative alone, or oftener with **cum**: as,

ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt, *they marched upon Caesar's camp with all their forces*.   **is cīvitātī persuāsit, ut cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent,** *well, this man induced the community to emigrate in a body, bag and baggage*.

THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

635. (1358.) Certain substantives without an attribute are put in the ablative alone to denote manner; but usually substantives without an attribute have **cum.**

Such adverbial ablatives are iūre and iniūriā, silentiō, ōrdine, sponte, etc.: as, **Arātus iūre laudātur,** *Aratus is justly admired*.   **iniūriā suspectum,** *wrongfully suspected*.   **silentiō ēgressus,** *going out in silence*.   With **cum: cum virtūte vīvere,** *to live virtuously*.

636. (1359.) The ablative of a substantive with an attribute is often used to denote manner, sometimes with **cum**: as,

"indoctus" dīcimus brevī prīmā litterā, "īnsānus" prōductā, "in-hūmānus" brevī, "īnfēlīx" longā, *we pronounce* indoctus *with the first letter short,* īnsānus *with it long,* inhūmānus *with it short,* īnfēlīx *with it long.*   ternō cōnsurgunt ōrdine rēmī, *with triple bank each time in concert rise the oars.*   Allobrogés māgnā cum cūrā suōs fīnēs tuentur, *the Allo-brogans guard their own territory with great care.*

637. (1360.) With a substantive meaning *way* or *manner*, as modō, rītū, etc., *feeling* or *intention*, as hāc mente, aequō animō, *condition*, as eā condiciōne, or a part of the body, as in nūdō capite, *bareheaded*, cum is not used.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

638. (1362.) The ablative of a substantive, with a predicate participle in agreement, is used to denote an attendant circumstance of an action.

In this construction, which is called the *Ablative Absolute*, the pres-ent participle is sometimes used : as, nūllō hoste prohibente incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātīs perdūxit, *with no enemy hindering, he conducted the legion in safety to the Nantuates.*   Much oftener, however, the per-fect participle : as, hōc respōnsō datō discessit, *this answer given he went away.*

639. (1365.) The ablative of a substantive, with a predicate noun in agreement, is often used to denote an attendant cir-cumstance of an action : as,

brevitātem secūtus sum tē magistrō, *I aimed at brevity with you as a teacher.*   nātus dīs inimīcīs, *born under wrath of gods.*

640. (1367.) The ablative absolute may denote in a loose way various relations which might be more distinctly ex-pressed by subordinate sentences.

So particularly : Time : as, tertiā initā vigiliā exercitum ēdūcit, *at the beginning of the third watch he leads the army out.*   Cause or means : as, C. Flāminium Caelius rēligiōne neglēctā cecidisse apud Trāsumēnum scrībit, *Caelius writes that Flaminius fell at Trasumene in consequence of his neglect of religious observances.*   Concession : as, id paucīs dēfen-dentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit, *though the defenders were few, he could not take it by storm.*   Condition : as, quae potest esse vītae iūcunditās sub-lātīs amīcitiīs ? *what pleasure can there be in life, if you take friendships*

away? Description : as, **domum vēnit capite obvolūtō,** *he came home with his head all muffled up.*

641. (1369.) The substantive of the ablative absolute usually denotes a different person or thing from any in the main sentence. But exceptions to this usage sometimes occur : as, **quibus audītīs, eōs domum remittit,** *after listening to these men, he sends them home again.*

642. (1372.) The ablative neuter of some perfect participles is used impersonally : as, **auspicātō,** *with auspices taken.* **sortītō,** *lots being drawn,* or *by lot.*

THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY

643. (1375.) The ablative with an adjective in agreement or with a limiting genitive is used to denote quality, either predicatively or attributively : as,

Predicatively : **capillō sunt prōmissō,** *they have long hair* or *let their hair grow long.* **ad flūmen Genūsum, quod rīpīs erat impedītīs,** *to the river Genusus, which had impracticable banks.* Attributively : **difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpīsque praeruptīs,** *a river hard to cross and with steep banks.* **bōs cervī figūrā,** *an ox with the shape of a stag.* Compare the genitive of quality (558).

THE ABLATIVE OF THE ROUTE TAKEN

644. (1376.) The instrumental ablative is used with verbs of motion to denote the route taken : as,

Aurēliā viā profectus est, *he has gone off by the Aurelia Road.* **omnibus viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat,** *he kept sending his chariot men out by all possible highways and byways.* **frūmentum Tiberī vēnit,** *some grain came by the Tiber.*

THE INSTRUMENTAL PROPER
THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT OR MEANS

645. (1377.) The ablative is used to denote the instrument or means : as,

lacte et carne vīvunt, pellibusque sunt vestītī, *they live on milk and meat, and they are clad in skins.* **contentus paucīs lēctōribus,** *content with readers few.* **centēnāque arbore flūctum verberat,** *and with an hundred beams at every stroke the wave he smites.* Rarely the ablative of a person, the person being then regarded as a thing : as, **iacent suīs testibus,** *they are cast by their own witnesses.*

646. (1379 f.) The instrumental ablative is used with the five deponents **fruor, fungor, potior, ūtor, vēscor,** and several of their compounds, and with **ūsus est** and **opus est:** as,

pāce numquam fruēmur, *we never shall enjoy ourselves with peace*, i. e. *we never shall enjoy peace.* fungar vice cōtis, *I'll play the whetstone's part.* castrīs nostrī potītī sunt, *our people made themselves masters of the camp.* vestrā operā ūtar, *I will avail myself of your services.* carne vēscor, *I live on meat.* opust chlamyde, *there is a job with a cloak*, i. e. *we need a cloak.* potior often has the genitive (593).

647. (1381.) **ūtor** often has a second predicative ablative: as, facilī mē ūtētur patre, *an easy-going father he will find in me.*

648. (1382.) **ūsus est** and **opus est** sometimes take a neuter participle: as, vīsō opust cautōst opus, *there's need of sight, there's need of care.*

649. (1383.) With **opus est**, the thing wanted is often made the subject nominative or subject accusative, with **opus** in the predicate: as, dux nōbīs et auctor opus est, *we need a leader and adviser.* Usually so when the thing needed is a neuter adjective or neuter pronoun: as, multa sibī opus esse, *that he needed much.*

THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

650. (1385.) The instrumental ablative is used to denote that in respect of which an assertion or a term is to be taken: as,

Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, *the Helvetians outdo the rest of the Kelts in bravery.* hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt, *these people all differ from each other in language, usages, and laws.*

THE ABLATIVE OF FULNESS

651. (1386.) The instrumental ablative is used with verbs of abounding, filling, and furnishing: as,

vīlla abundat porcō, haedō, āgnō, *the country place is running over with swine, kid, and lamb.* tōtum mōntem hominibus complērī iūssit, *he gave orders for the whole mountain to be covered over with men.* cōnsulārī imperiō praeditus, *vested with the authority of consul.* For the genitive with compleō and impleō, see 594.

THE ABLATIVE OF MEASURE, EXCHANGE, AND PRICE

652. (1388.) The instrumental ablative is used with verbs of measuring and of exchanging, and in expressions of value and price: as,

quod **mágnōs hominēs virtūte mētīmur**, *because we gauge great men by their merit.* **nēmō nisi victor pāce bellum mūtāvit,** *nobody except a conqueror has ever exchanged war for peace.* **haec sīgna sēstertium sex mīlibus quīngentīs esse vēndita,** *that these statues were sold for sixty-five hundred sesterces.*

653. (1391.) The ablatives thus used are (*a.*) those of general substantives of value and price, such as **pretium,** (*b.*) numerical designations of money, or (*c.*) neuter adjectives of quantity, **mágnō, permágnō, parvō, minimō:** as, **mágnō decumās vēndidī,** *I sold the tithes at a high figure.* For **tantī** and **quantī, plūris** and **minōris,** see 578.

654. (1392.) The ablative is also used with **dīgnus** and **indīgnus:** as,

dīgnī māiōrum locō, *well worthy of the high standing of their ancestors.* **nūlla vōx est audīta populī Rōmānī māiestāte indīgna,** *not a word was heard out of keeping with the grandeur of Rome.*

THE ABLATIVE OF THE AMOUNT OF DIFFERENCE

655. (1393.) The instrumental ablative is used to denote the amount of difference.

This ablative is used with any words whatever of comparative or of superlative meaning: as, **ūnō diē longiōrem mēnsem faciunt aut bīduō,** *they make the month longer by a day, or even by two days.* **bīduō post,** *two days after.* **paucīs ante diēbus,** *a few days ago.* **multō māxima pars,** *the largest part by far.*

656. (1394.) In expressions of time, the accusative is sometimes used with **post,** less frequently with **ante,** as prepositions, instead of the ablative of difference: as, **post paucōs diēs,** *after a few days.* **post diem tertium,** *after the third day,* according to the Roman way of reckoning, i. e. the next day but one.

657. (1395.) When the time before or after which anything occurs is denoted by a substantive, the substantive is put in the accusative with

ante or **post**: as, **paulō ante tertiam vigiliam,** *a little before the third watch.*   **bīduō ante victōriam,** *the day but one before the victory.*

658. (1397.) When the time before or after which anything occurs is denoted by a sentence, the sentence may be introduced by **quam**: as, **post diem tertium gesta rēs est quam dīxerat,** *it took place two days after he said it.*

USE OF CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

659. (1410.) The accusative is accompanied by the following prepositions:

ad, *to,* **adversus** or **adversum,** *towards, against,* **ante,** *before,* **apud,** *near, at,* **circā, circum, circiter,** *round, about,* **cis, citrā,** *this side of,* **contrā,** *opposite to,* **ergā,** *towards,* **extrā,** *outside,* **īnfrā,** *below,* **inter,** *between,* **intrā,** *within,* **iūxtā,** *near,* **ob,** *against,* **penes,** *in the possession of,* **per,** *through,* **pōne, post,** *behind,* **praeter,** *past,* **prope (propius, proximē), propter,** *near,* **secundum,** *after,* **subter,** *under,* **suprā,** *above,* **trāns,** *across,* **ūltrā,** *beyond.*

660. (1411.) Prepositions which accompany the accusative may be easily remembered in this order:

> ante, apud, ad, adversum,
> circum, cis, ob, trāns, secundum,
> penes, pōne, prope, per,
> post, and all in -ā and -ter.

661. (1413.) The substantive forms **prīdiē,** *the day before,* and **postrīdiē,** *the day after,* are sometimes used with an accusative like prepositions to denote dates: as, **prīdiē nōnās Māiās,** *the day before the nones of May,* i.e. *6 May.*   For the genitive with these words, see 553.

662. (1417.) The ablative is accompanied by the following prepositions:

abs, ab, or **ā,** *from,* **cōram,** *face to face,* **dē,** *down from, from, of,* **ex** or **ē,** *out of,* **prae,** *at the fore, in front of,* **prō,** *before,* **cum,** *with,* **sine,** *without.*

663. (1418.) Prepositions which accompany the ablative may be easily remembered in this order:

> abs (ab, ā), cum, cōram, dē,
> prae, prō, sine, ex (or ē).

664. (1420.) **tenus,** *the length,* originally a substantive accusative (513),

is sometimes used as a preposition with the ablative, and standing after its case: as, **Taurō tenus,** *not further than Taurus.* **hāctenus,** *thus far, only thus far.* Also, as a real substantive, with a genitive: as, **Cūmārum tenus,** *as far as Cumae.*

665. (1421.) The adverbs **palam,** *in presence of,* **procul,** *apart from,* either *near* or *far,* **simul,** *with,* are rarely used in poetry and late prose as prepositions with the ablative.

666. (1423.) **in** and **sub** accompany the accusative of the end of motion, the locative ablative of rest: as,

in cūriam vēnimus, *we went to the senate-house.* **hīc pāgus ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat,** *this canton had sent his army under the yoke.* **erimus in castrīs,** *we shall be in camp.* **viridī membra sub arbutō strātus,** *stretched out—his limbs—all under an arbute green.*

667. (1425.) **super** accompanies the ablative when it has colloquially the sense of **dē,** *about, in reference to:* as, **hāc super rē scrībam ad tē Rēgiō,** *I'll write you about this from Regium.* In other senses, the accusative is usual.

POSITION OF PREPOSITIONS

668. (1433 ff.) In general a preposition precedes its case; but disyllabic prepositions sometimes follow. With a personal or a reflexive pronoun, **cum** regularly follows, as **mēcum, nōbīscum, sēcum;** also often with a relative: as, **quibuscum.**

USE OF ADVERBS

669. (1438.) Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, or adverbs: as,

Ubiī māgnopere ōrābant, *the Ubians earnestly entreated.* **bene quiēvit, libenter cibum sūmpsit,** *he has slept beautifully, he has relished his food.* **ēgregiē fortis,** *exceptionally brave.*

670. (1439.) An adverb is sometimes used with the meaning of an adjective: as, **reliquīs deinceps diēbus,** *the remaining successive days.* Particularly when the substantive expresses character, like an adjective: **rūsticānus vir, sed plānē vir,** *a country man, but every inch a man.* Other substantives also may be qualified by an adverb, when a verb construction or a participle is implied: as, **C. Flāminius cōnsul iterum,** *Flaminius in his second consulship.*

147

NEGATIVE ADVERBS

671. (1443.) The negative oftenest used in declaration or interrogation is **nōn**, *not*.

672. (1445.) The conjunction **neque** or **nec** is used for *and not, but not*, unless a single word is to be emphasized or contrasted: as, **neque abest suspīciō**, *and the suspicion is not wanting*.

673. (1447.) **nē** usually introduces an imperative or a subjunctive, as will be explained further on. But **nē** is also used in the combination **nē . . . quidem**, *not even, not . . . either*, with the emphatic word between **nē** and **quidem**: as, **nē tum quidem**, *not even then*.

674. (1449.) The negative **haud**, *not*, is used principally with adjectives and adverbs, less frequently with verbs: as,

rem haud sānē difficilem, *a thing not particularly hard*. **haud procul,** *not far*. It occurs here and there with a few verbs, but is principally confined to **sciō**, in the combination **haud sciō an,** *I don't know but*.

675. (1452.) Two negatives in the same sentence are usually equivalent to an affirmative.

Thus, with **nōn** first, an indefinite affirmative: as, **nōn nēmō**, *somebody*, **nōn nihil,** *something*, **nōn numquam,** *sometimes*. With **nōn** second, a universal affirmative: as, **nēmō nōn**, *everybody, every human being*. **nihil nōn**, *every thing*. **numquam nōn**, *always*. **nōn possum nōn cōnfitērī**, *I must confess*. **nēmō ïgnōrat**, *everybody knows*. But see 762.

USE OF DEGREES OF COMPARISON
THE COMPARATIVE

676. (1455.) When two things only are compared, the comparative is used: as,

uter igitur melior? *which of the two then is the better?*

677. (1457.) An adjective or adverb is sometimes compared with another adjective or adverb. In such comparisons **quam** is always used.

In this case: Both members may have the positive form, the first with **magis**: as, **Celer disertus magis est quam sapiēns,** *Celer is more eloquent than wise*. Both members may have the comparative suffix: as, **pestilentia minācior quam perniciōsior,** *a plague more alarming than destructive*.

148

678. (1460.) The comparative of an adjective or adverb often denotes that which is more than usual or more than is right : as,

> **senectūs est nātūrā loquācior,** *age is naturally rather garrulous.* **stomachābātur senex, sī quid asperius dīxeram,** *the old gentleman always got provoked if I said anything a bit rough.*

THE SUPERLATIVE

679. (1466.) The superlative may be strengthened by the addition of such words as **ūnus,** *preeminently,* usually with a genitive, **māximē, quam,** with or without a form of **possum,** *as possible,* etc., etc. (869), or by **longē,** *far,* and **vel,** *perhaps, even :* as,

> **cōnfirmāverim rem ūnam esse omnium difficillimam,** *I am not afraid to avouch it is the one hardest thing in the world.* **longē nōbilissimus,** *the man of highest birth by far.* **quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam contendit,** *he pushes into Gaul by the quickest marches he can.* **quam mātūrrimē,** *as early as possible.*

680. (1467.) The superlative is also used to denote a very high degree of the quality, and may then be translated by the positive with some such word as *most, very :* as, **homo turpissimus,** *an utterly unprincipled man.*

(B.) USE OF THE VERB

VOICE

THE ACTIVE VOICE

681. (1469.) In the active voice, the subject is represented as performing the action of the verb.

682. (1471.) The active of one verb sometimes serves as the passive of another: thus, **pereō,** *go to destruction, die,* serves as the passive of **perdō,** *destroy.* Similarly **fīō,** *become, am made,* is used in the present system as the passive of **faciō,** *make.*

THE PASSIVE VOICE

683. (1472.) In the passive voice, the subject is represented as acted upon.

684. (1476.) The person by whom the action is done is put in the ablative with **ab** or **ā** (614) ; the thing by which it is done is put in the instrumental ablative (645): as,

> **nōn numquam latrō ā viātōre occīditur,** *once in a while the robber gets killed by the wayfarer.* **ūnīus virī prūdentiā Graecia līberāta est,** *Greece was saved from slavery by the sagacity of a single man.*

685. (1478.) Sometimes the person by whom the action is done is indicated by the dative of the possessor: see 545. And regularly with the gerund and gerundive construction (991).

686. (1479.) Only verbs of transitive use have ordinarily a complete passive. Verbs of intransitive use have only the impersonal forms of the passive: as,

> **diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est,** *there was long and sharp fighting.* **mihī quidem persuādērī numquam potuit animōs ēmorī,** *for my part, I never could be convinced that the soul becomes extinct at death.*

687. (1481.) The passive had originally a reflexive meaning, which is still to be seen in the passive of many verbs: as, **exercēbātur plūrimum currendō et lūctandō,** *he took a great deal of exercise in running and wrestling.* **dēnsōs fertur in hostīs,** *he tries to charge upon the serried foes.*

688. (1483.) Passive forms of **coepī** are commonly used in the perfect system, when a dependent infinitive is passive: as, **litterīs ōrātiō est coepta mandārī,** *oratory began to be put in black and white.*

<div align="center">DEPONENTS</div>

689. (1486.) Many verbs have only passive inflections, but with the meaning of active inflections.   Such verbs are called *Deponents* (353).

690. (1487.) In many deponents, a reflexive, passive, or reciprocal action is still clearly to be seen: as, **nāscor,** *am born;* **moror,** *delay myself, get delayed;* **ūtor,** *avail myself;* **amplectimur,** *we hug each other.*

691. (1491.) When it is desirable to express the passive of a deponent, a synonyme is sometimes used : thus, the passive of **mīror,** *admire,* may sometimes be represented by **laudor,** *am praised.*   Or some circumlocution : as, **familia in suspīciōnem est vocāta,** *the household was suspected,* as passive of **suspicor.**

<div align="center">150</div>

MOOD

The Indicative Mood

DECLARATIONS

692. (1493.) The indicative mood is used in absolute declarations: as,

arma virumque canō, *arms and the man I sing.* **leve fit quod bene fertur onus,** *light gets the load that's bravely borne.*

693. (1495.) Certain verbs and verbal expressions denoting ability, duty, propriety, necessity, and the like, mostly with an infinitive, are regularly put in the indicative, even when the action of the infinitive is not performed.

This applies to declarations, questions, or exclamations: as, **possum dē ichneumonum ūtilitāte dīcere, sed nōlō esse longus,** *I might expatiate on the usefulness of the ichneumon, but I do not care to be long-winded.* **quid enim facere poterāmus?** *for what else could we have done?* **licuit uxōrem genere summō dūcere,** *I might have married a wife of high degree.* **quantō melius fuerat prōmissum patris nōn esse servātum,** *how much better it would have been for the father's word not to have been kept.*

694. (1496.) The principal verbs and verbal expressions thus used are: (*a.*) **possum, licet, dēbeō, oportet.** (*b.*) **aequum, necesse est; ūtilius, melius est; facile, difficile, longum, māgnum est; est** with the predicative genitive, or a possessive pronoun (557.)

QUESTIONS

695. (1499.) The indicative is the mood ordinarily used in inquiries and in exclamations: as,

(*a.*) **huic ego "studēs?" inquam. respondit "etiam." "ubī?" "Mediōlānī." "cūr nōn hīc?" "quia nūllōs hīc praeceptōrēs habēmus,"** *said I to the boy, "do you go to school?" "yes, sir," said he; "where?" "at Mediolanum"; "why not here?" "oh because we haven't any teachers here."*

696. (1501.) There are two kinds of questions: (1.) Such questions as call for the answer *yes* or *no* in English: as, *is he gone?* These may conveniently be called *Yes or No Questions.* (2.) Questions introduced

by an interrogative pronoun, or by a word derived from an interrogative pronoun: as, *who is gone? where is he?* These are called *Pronoun Questions.*

<div align="center">YES OR NO QUESTIONS</div>

697. (1502.) Yes or No questions are sometimes put without any interrogative particle: as, **huic ego "studēs?" inquam,** *said I to the boy,* "*do you go to school?*" Especially with **nōn:** as, **patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs?** *you don't see that your schemes are out?*

698. (1503.) Yes or No questions are usually introduced by one of the interrogative particles **-ne, nōnne, num, an.**

699. (1504.) A question with **-ne** may inquire simply, or it may either expect an affirmative answer like **nōnne,** or less frequently a negative answer like **num:** as,

vīvuntne? *are they alive?* **facitne ut dīxī?** *isn't he acting as I said?* **quid, mundum praeter hunc umquamne vīdistī?** **negābis,** *tell me, did you ever see any universe except this one?* *you will say no.*

700. (1506.) To a question with **nōnne,** a positive answer is usually expected: as, **nōnne meministī?** : : **meminī vērō,** *don't you remember?* : : *oh yes.*

701. (1507.) To a question with **num** a negative answer is generally expected: as, **num negāre audēs?** *do you undertake to deny it?*

702. (1508.) A question with **an** usually challenges or comments emphatically on something previously expressed or implied: as,

an habent quās gallīnae manūs? *what, what, do hens have hands?* **an** is also particularly common in argumentative language, in anticipating, criticising, or refuting an opponent: as, **quid dīcis? an bellō Siciliàm virtūte tuā līberātam?** *what do you say? possibly that it was by your prowess that Sicily was rid of the war?*

<div align="center">POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE ANSWERS</div>

703. (1511 f.) There are no two current Latin words corresponding exactly with *yes* and *no* in answers. A positive answer is expressed by some emphatic word of the question, repeated with such change as the context may require: as,

an nōn dīxī esse hōc futūrum? : : **dīxtī,** *didn't I say that this would be?* : : *you did.* The repeated word may be emphasized by **sānē/vērō:** as, **dāsne manēre animōs post mortem?** : : **dō vērō,** *do you grant that the soul lives on after death?* : : *oh yes.* Often, however, adverbs are used,

<div align="center">152</div>

without the repetition, such as **certē, etiam, ita vērō, sānē, scīlicet,** *oh of course,* **vērō.**

704. (1513.) A negative answer is expressed by a similar repetition, with **nōn** or some other negative added: as,

estne frāter intus ? : : **nōn est,** *is brother in ? : : he's not.* Or, without repetition, by such words as **nōn minimē, minimē vērō.**

ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS

705. (1519.) Of two alternative questions, the first is commonly introduced by **utrum,** or **-ne.** The second is introduced by **an,** or if it is negative, by **an nōn:** as,

utrum libentēs an invītī dabant ? *did they offer voluntarily or did they consent to give under stress ?* **servusne es an līber ?** *art bond or free ?* **videōne Clīniam an nōn ?** *do I see Clinia or not ?*

PRONOUN QUESTIONS

706. (1526.) Pronoun questions or exclamations are introduced by interrogative pronouns, or words of pronoun origin.

Such words are: (*a.*) **quis quī, uter, quālis, quantus, quotus : quid rīdēs ?** *why dost thou laugh ?* **hōra quota est ?** *what's o'clock ?* (*b.*) Or **unde, ubī, quō, cūr, quī** ablative, *how,* **quīn,** *why not,* **quam,** *how:* as, **unde venīs et quō tendis ?** *whence dost thou come, and whither art thou bound ?* **deus fallī quī potuit ?** *how could a god have been taken in ?*

The Infinitive of Intimation

707. (1534.) The infinitive is principally used in subordination, and will be spoken of under that head. One use, however, of the present infinitive in main sentences, as a kind of substitute for a past indicative, requires mention here.

708. (1535.) In animated narration, the present infinitive with a subject in the nominative sometimes takes the place of the imperfect or perfect indicative: as,

interim cōtīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, *there was Caesar meantime every day dunning and dunning the Aeduans for the grain.* **intereā Catilīna in prīmā aciē versārī, labōrantibus succurrere,** *Catiline*

meantime bustling round in the forefront of battle, helping them that were sore bestead.

709. (1536.) This infinitive is used to sketch or outline persistent, striking, or portentous action, where description fails; and as it merely *intimates* the action, without distinct declaration, and without notation of time, number, or person, it is called the *Infinitive of Intimation.* Many call it the *Historical Infinitive.* It cannot be adequately represented in English.

The Subjunctive Mood

I. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE

(A.) Wish

710. (1540.) The subjunctive may be used to express a wish.

Wishes are often introduced by **utinam.** In negative wishes, **nē** is used.

711. (1541.) The present represents a wish as practicable: as,

utinam illum diem videam, *I hope I may see the day.* **utinam negēs,** *I wish you would deny it.*

712. (1544.) The imperfect represents a wish as hopeless in the present or immediate future, the pluperfect represents it as unfulfilled in the past: as,

utinam ego tertius vōbīs amīcus adscrīberer, *would that I could be enrolled with you myself, as the third friend.* **utinam mē mortuum prius vīdissēs,** *I wish you had seen me dead first.*

(B.) Exhortation, Direction

713. (1547.) The subjunctive may be used to express an exhortation or a direction. The usual negative is **nē.**

714. (1548.) The present expresses what is to be done or is not to be done in the future: as,

cōnsīdāmus hīc in umbrā, *let us sit down here in the shade.* **nē difficilia optēmus,** *let us not hanker after impossibilities.* **istō bonō ūtāre, dum adsit,**

enjoy this blessing while you have it with you. **nōmina dēclīnāre et verba in prīmīs puerī sciant,** *first and foremost boys are to know how to inflect nouns and verbs.*

715. (1551.) In prohibitions, the second person singular of the present or perfect is sometimes employed: as,

nē illum verberēs, *you mustn't thrash the man.* **nē trānsierīs Ibērum,** *do not cross the Iberus.* But **nōlī** with the infinitive or **cavē** with the subjunctive is commoner; see 729.

(C.) WILLINGNESS, CONCESSION

716. (1553.) The subjunctive of desire may be used to denote willingness or concession: as,

ōderint dum metuant, *they are welcome to hate, as long as they fear.* **nē sit sānē summum malum dolor, malum certē est,** *grant that pain is not the worst evil, an evil it certainly is.*

II. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ACTION CONCEIVABLE

717. (1554.) The subjunctive is often used to represent action as conceivable, without asserting that it actually takes place. The negative is **nōn.**

718. (1556 ff.) The present and perfect are commonly used alike, denoting action in an indefinite future: as,

Fōrtūnam citius reperiās quam retineās, *dame Fortune thou mayst sooner find than bind.* **fōrsitan aliquis dīcat,** *perhaps somebody may say.* **nōn facile dīxerim,** *I could not readily say.* **tū vērō eum nec nimis valdē umquam nec nimis saepe laudāverīs,** *oh no, rest assured you never can praise him too emphatically nor too often.*

719. (1555.) This subjunctive is particularly common in guarded or diffident statements: thus, **velim,** *I could wish,* **nōlim,** *I should not be willing,* **mālim,** *I would rather,* are often preferred to a blunter **volō,** *I insist,* **nōlō,** *I won't,* **mālō,** *I prefer.*

720. (1559.) The imperfect sometimes denotes action which might have taken place in the past: as, **vidērēs,** *thou mightst have seen.* **cernerēs,** *you might have descried.*

721. (1560.) The imperfect often denotes action not performed at the present time; so especially **vellem (nōllem, mállem):** as,

vellem adesse posset Panaetius ; quaererem ex eō, *I only wish Panaetius could be with us: I should ask him* (Panaetius was dead). **in hāc fortūnā perūtilis ēius opera esset,** *in the present pinch his services would be extremely valuable.*

722. (1561.) The pluperfect represents action which did not take place in the past : as,

vellem quidem licēret : hōc dīxissem, *I only wish it were allowed; I should have said so and so.* **vīcissent inprobōs bonī ; quid deinde ?** *the good might have overpowered the bad ; what next ?*

QUESTIONS

723. (1563 ff.) The subjunctive is often used to ask what action or whether any action is desired, commanded, proper, necessary, or conceivable.

In many instances a negative answer or no answer at all is expected. The negative is **nē,** sometimes **nōn.**

quid faciam ? *what am I to do ?* **huic cēdāmus ? hūius condiciōnēs audiāmus ?** *shall we bow the knee to him ? shall we listen to his terms ?* **sī enim Zēnōnī licuit, cūr nōn liceat Catōnī ?** *for if it was allowed Zeno, why should not it be allowed Cato ?* **ego mihĩ umquam bonōrum praesidium dēfutūrum putārem ?** *could I have dreamed that I should ever lack the protection of the patriotic ?*

724. (1568.) The question may have **utī** or **ut:** as, **tē ut ūlla rēs frangat ? tū ut umquam tē corrigās ?** *any thing break you down ? you ever reform ?*

The Imperative Mood
COMMAND

725. (1571.) The second person of the imperative mood is used in commands, exhortations, or entreaties : as,

dēsilīte mīlitēs, *overboard, my men.* sīgnifer, statue sīgnum, *standard-bearer, plant your standard.* vōs vōbīs cōnsulite, *every man of you for himself.* patent portae, proficīscere, ēdūc tēcum etiam omnīs tuōs, *the gates are open, march forth; take out all your myrmidons with you too.*

726. (1575.) The third person, and the longer forms of the second person, are used particularly in laws, legal documents, and treaties, and also in impressive general rules and maxims: as,

amīcitia rēgī Antiochō cum populō Rōmānō hīs lēgibus estō, *there shall be amity between king Antiochus and Rome on the following terms.* vīcīnīs bonus estō, *always be good to your neighbors.* The longer forms are often called the *Future Imperative.*

727. (1577.) The longer forms are very often used in the apodosis of a sentence, particularly with a future or a future perfect protasis: as, cum ego P. Grānium testem prōdūxerō, refellitō, sī poteris, *when I put Granius on the witness stand, refute him if you can.*

PROHIBITION

728. (1583.) Prohibitions in the second person are usually expressed by nōlī or nōlīte with the infinitive, particularly in classical prose: as,

obiūrgāre nōlī, *don't scold.* nōlīte id velle quod fierī nōn potest, *don't yearn after the unattainable.* For the subjunctive in prohibitions, see 715.

729. (1585.) A prohibition in the second person is often expressed by the subjunctive accompanying cavĕ, or cavĕ nē: as, cavē festīnēs, *don't be in a hurry.*

TENSE

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE
THE PRESENT TENSE

730. (1587.) The present indicative represents action as going on at the time of speaking or writing: as,

scrībō, *I write,* or *I am writing.* domus aedificātur, *the house is building.*

157

731. (1588.) The present is used to denote action customary or repeated at any time, or a general truth: as,

agrī cultūrae nōn student, *they do not apply themselves to farming.* **dum vītant stultī vitia, in contrāria currunt,** *while fools essay a vice to shun, into its opposite they run.*

732. (1589.) The present, when accompanied by some expression of duration of time, is often used to denote action which has been going on some time and is still going on.

This present is translated by the English perfect: as, **Lilybaeī multōs iam annōs habitat,** *he has lived at Lilybaeum this many a year.* **nimium diū tē castra dēsīderant,** *the camp has felt your absence altogether too long.*

733. (1590.) The present is often used to represent past action as going on now. This is called the *Present of Vivid Narration:* as,

trānsfīgitur scūtum Puliōni et verūtum in balteō dēfīgitur. āvertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam, inpedītumque hostēs circumsistunt, *Pulio has his shield run through, and a javelin sticks fast in his sword belt. This mischance puts his scabbard out of reach, and the enemy encompass him in this hampered condition.*

734. (1591.) The present is sometimes used in brief historical or personal memoranda, to note incidents day by day or year by year as they occur. This is called the *Annalistic Present:* as,

Proca deinde rēgnat. is Numitōrem prōcreat. Numitōrī rēgnum vetustum Silviae gentis lēgat, *after this Proca is king; this man begets Numitor; to Numitor he bequeaths the ancient throne of the Silvian race.*

THE IMPERFECT TENSE

735. (1594.) The imperfect indicative represents action as going on in past time: as,

scrībēbam, *I was writing,* or *I wrote.* **multōsque per annōs errābant āctī fātīs,** *and they for many a year were roaming round, by fates pursued.*

736. (1595.) The imperfect often denotes past action lasting while something else occurred: as,

an tum erās cōnsul, cum mea domus ārdēbat? *were you perhaps consul at the time my house was burning down?*

737. (1596.) The imperfect is used to denote repeated or customary past action or condition: as,

noctū ambulābat in pūblicō Themistoclēs, *Themistocles used to promenade the streets nights.*

738. (1597.) The imperfect, when accompanied by some expression of duration of time, is used to denote action which had been going on for some time, and was still going on.

This imperfect, which is translated by the English pluperfect, is analogous to the present in 732: as, **pater grandis nātū iam diū lectō tenēbātur,** *his aged father had long been bedridden.*

739. (2302.) The imperfect is very often used to denote action proposed, attempted, or begun, but not necessarily carried out. This is called the *Conative Use.*

nostrōs ingredī prohibēbant, *they tried to stop our people from getting in.* **num dubitās id mē imperante facere, quod iam tuā sponte faciēbās?** *do you possibly hesitate to do at my command what you wanted to do, as it was, yourself?*

THE PERFECT TENSE

740. (1602.) The Latin perfect indicative represents two English tenses: thus, the preterite, *I wrote*, and the perfect, *I have written*, are both expressed by the perfect **scrīpsī.** In the first sense, this perfect is called the *Historical Perfect;* in the second sense, it is called the *Perfect Definite.*

THE HISTORICAL PERFECT

741. (1603.) The historical perfect simply expresses action as having occurred at an indefinite past time, without implying anything as to the duration of the action: as,

scrīpsī, *I wrote.* **vēnī, vīdī, vīcī,** *came, saw, overcame.* **apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx,** *among the Helvetians, the man of highest birth by all odds was Orgetorix.*

THE PERFECT DEFINITE

742. (1605.) The perfect definite expresses action

which is already completed at the present time, and the effects of which are regarded as continuing : as,

> **scrīpsī,** *I have written.* **dīxērunt,** *they have finished speaking.*

743. (1610.) The perfect of some verbs implies a negative idea emphatically by under-statement : as, fuit Ilium, *Ilium has been,* i. e. Ilium is no more. **vīximus, flōruimus,** *we have lived our life, we have had our day.*

744. (1611.) The perfect may denote an action often done, or never done. This is commonly called the *Gnomic Perfect.*

> **iam saepe hominēs patriam cārōsque parentēs |prōdiderunt,** *time and again have men their land betrayed and parents dear.* **multī, cum obesse vellent, prōfuērunt et, cum prōdesse, obfuērunt,** *many a man has done good, when he meant to do harm, and when he meant to do good, has done harm.*

THE PLUPERFECT TENSE

745. (1614.) The pluperfect indicative expresses past action, completed before another past action expressed or understood : as,

> **scrīpseram,** *I had written.* **mortuus erat Agis rēx. fīlium relīquerat Leōtychidem,** *Agis the king had died ; he had left a son Leotychides.*

THE FUTURE TENSE

746. (1619.) The future indicative expresses future action, either momentary or continuous : as,

> **scrībam,** *I shall write, I shall be writing,* or *I will write, I will be writing.* The future commonly expresses either prediction, or will, determination, promise, threat : as, **tuās litterās exspectābō,** *I shall be on the lookout for letters from you.* **vīvum tē nōn relinquam ; moriēre virgīs,** *I will not leave you alive ; you shall die under the rod.*

747. (1624.) The future is sometimes used, particularly in the second person, to express an exhortation, a command, or with **nōn** a prohibition : as, **crās ferrāmenta Teānum tollētis,** *to-morrow to Teanum you will take your tools.*

THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

748. (1626.) The future perfect indicative expresses completed future action: as,

scrīpserō, *I shall have written,* or *I will have written.* The future perfect is very common in Latin, particularly in protasis with a relative, with **cum, ubī,** etc., or with **sī,** to express action anterior in time to a future; in English, this future perfect is usually represented by a loose present or perfect: as, **quicquid fēceris, adprobābō,** *whatever you do, I shall think right.*

THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE WITH **sum**

749. (1633.) The future active participle combined with the tenses of **sum** expresses action impending, resolved on, or destined, at the time indicated by the tense of the verb: as,

bellum scrīptūrus sum, quod populus Rōmānus cum Iugurthā gessit, *I purpose to write the history of the war that the people of Rome carried on with Jugurtha.* **fīet illud, quod futūrum est,** *whatever is destined to be, will be.* **Delphōs petiīt, ubī columnās, quibus impositūrī statuās rēgis Perseī fuerant, suīs statuīs dēstināvit,** *he went to Delphi, where he appropriated for his own statues the pillars on which they had intended to put statues of king Perses.*

THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

750. (1634.) In simple sentences, the tenses of the subjunctive correspond in general to the same tenses of the indicative. But the present has a future meaning; the imperfect sometimes expresses past, sometimes present action ; and the perfect sometimes expresses past action, and sometimes future action. For examples of the uses of the tenses, see 711–724.

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE, OR COORDINATION

751. (1636.) Two or more independent simple sentences may be coordinated (466) to form a compound sentence (467) in one of two ways: either without a connective, or with a connective.

L   161

WITHOUT A CONNECTIVE

752. (1637.) When simple sentences or parts of sentences are coordinated without any connective, this mode of arrangement is called *Asyndeton*. It is commonly used as follows :

753. (1639.) In animated narration of events happening at the same moment, in mention of colleagues in office, and in many set phrases : as, **nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt,** *our men rush speedily to arms, clamber up the palisade.* **huic s. c. intercessit C. Caelius, C. Pānsa, tribūnī pl.,** *this decree of the senate was objected to by Caelius and Pansa, tribunes of the commons.* **hī ferre agere plēbem,** *these people worrying and harrying the commons* (708).

754. (1640.) In contrasts or antitheses : as, **vincere scīs, Hannibal, victōriā ūtī nescīs,** *you know how to conquer, Hannibal, but not how to use victory.*

WITH A CONNECTIVE

COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS

755. (1644.) Copulative conjunctions denote union and connect both the sentences and their meaning. They are **et, -que, atque,** or **ac,** *and,* and **neque** or **nec,** *neither.*

756. (1645 f.) **et,** *and,* is the commonest copulative, and connects either likes or unlikes ; with two or more members, it is either used between them, or is prefixed for emphasis to all : as,

Dēmocritus alba discernere et ātra nōn poterat, *Democritus could not tell white and black apart.* **et discipulus et magister perhibēbantur inprobī,** *both pupil and master were rated as knaves.* **persuādent Rauricīs et Tulingīs et Latovicīs utī ūnā cum hīs proficīscantur,** *they induce the Rauricans, Tulingans, and Latovicans to join them in their march.*

757. (1649.) **-que,** *and,* combines members which belong together and make a whole, though they may be different or opposed to each other : as,

rogat ōratque tē, *he begs and entreats you.* **lībertī servolīque nōbilium,** *the freedmen and slaves of the great.* **-que** is usually put after the first word of the new member.

758. (1651.) After two members without a connective, a third member is sometimes appended by **-que :** as, **satis habēbat hostem rapīnīs,**

pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre, *he was satisfied with keeping the enemy from plundering, foraging, and ravaging.*

759. (1652.) **atque,** or before any consonant except **h** often **ac,** *and, and besides,* adds something belonging essentially to what goes before, but more important as a supplement or extension ; as, **sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit,** *he sprang overboard and furthermore proceeded to bear the eagle upon the enemy.*

760. (1653.) **atque** is used in comparisons, after words of likeness and unlikeness : as, **parī spatiō trānsmissus, atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam,** *the journey across is just as long as it is from Gaul to Britain.*

761. (1657.) **neque** or **nec,** *neither, nor, and . . . not, but . . . not,* is used as a negative copulative, sometimes as a negative adversative : as,

opīniōnibus volgī rapimur in errōrem nec vēra cernimus, *we are swept into error by the delusions of the world and cannot make out the truth.* **subsidiō suīs iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum mīlitum impetum sustinēre potuērunt,** *they went to aid their people and carried the hill, but they could not stand the fiery onset of our soldiers.* **neque** or **nec** is often repeated : as, **nec meliōrēs nec beātiōrēs esse possumus,** *we can neither be better nor wiser.*

762. (1661.) After a general negative, a word may be emphasized by **nē . . . quidem** or **nōn modo,** or the parts of a compound sentence may be distributed by **neque . . . neque,** without destroying the negation (675) : as,

nihil in locīs commūnibus, nē in fānīs quidem, nihil istum neque prīvātī neque pūblicī tōtā in Siciliā relīquisse, *that the defendant has left nothing untouched in public places, no, not even in the temples, nothing either in the way of private or of public property, in all Sicily.*

COMBINATION OF DIFFERENT COPULATIVES

763. (1665.) Affirmative and negative copulatives are sometimes combined. Thus **neque** or **nec** combined with **et,** in the sequences **neque . . . et** and **et . . . neque** is common in Cicero : as,

nec mīror et gaudeō, *in the first place I am not surprised, and in the second place I feel glad.*

DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS

764. (1667.) Disjunctive conjunctions connect the sentences, but disconnect the meaning. They are **aut, vel, sīve** or **seu,** *or.* Of these conjunctions, **aut, vel,** and **sīve** are often

placed before two or more members of a sentence in the sense of *either . . . or.*

765. (1668.) **aut,** *or,* sometimes *or even, or at least,* is used between two members which are to be represented as essentially different in meaning, and of which one excludes the other: as, **hīc vincendum aut moriendum, mīlitēs, est,** *here you must conquer, my men, or die.*

766. (1670.) **vel,** *or,* introduces an alternative as a matter of choice or preference, and often relates merely to the selection of an expression: as, **Catilīnam ex urbe vel ēiēcimus vel ēmīsimus vel ipsum ēgredientem verbīs prōsecūtī sumus,** *we have—what shall I say?—driven Catiline out of town, or allowed him to go out, or, when he was going out of his own accord, wished him a pleasant journey.*

767. (1672.) **sīve** or **seu,** *or,* when used once only, is found chiefly in corrections added: as, **dīxit Pompēius, sīve voluit,** *Pompey made a speech, or rather attempted to make one.*

768. (1673.) **sīve** is often repeated in the sense of *either,* or *no matter whether . . . or:* as, **ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum,** *thus, no matter whether from chance or through special providence.*

ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS

769. (1676.) Adversative conjunctions connect the sentences, but contrast the meaning. They are **autem,** *on the other hand,* **sed, vērum,** *but,* **vērō,** *but, indeed,* **at,** *but,* **tamen,** *nevertheless.*

Of these conjunctions, **autem** and **vērō** are put after one word, or sometimes after two closely connected words; **tamen** is put either at the beginning or after an emphatic word.

770. (1677.) **autem,** *again, on the other hand, however,* simply continues the discourse by a statement appended to the preceding, without setting it aside: as,

hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur, *to the chieftains of this nation on the one hand he promises moneys, and to the community on the other hand the hegemony of the whole province.*

771. (1679.) **sed** and **vērum,** *but,* are used either in restriction, or, after a negative, in direct opposition: as, **nōn ego erus tibī, sed servus sum,** *I am not your master, but your slave.*

164

772. (1680.) **nōn modo**, or **nōn sōlum**, *not only, not alone*, is followed by **sed etiam**, *but also :* as, **quī nōn sōlum interfuit hīs rēbus, sed etiam praefuit**, *who has not had a hand only in these matters, but complete charge.*

773. (1682.) **nōn modo** or **nōn sōlum**, when attended by another negative, may also be followed by **sed nē . . . quidem**, *but not even :* as,

nōn modo tibī nōn īrāscor, sed nē reprehendō quidem factum tuum, *so far from being angry with you I do not even criticise your action.* When both members have the same predicate, usually placed last, the negation in **nē . . . quidem** usually applies to the first member also : as, **tālis vir nōn modo facere, sed nē cōgitāre quidem quicquam audēbit, quod nōn audeat praedicāre,** *a man of this kind will not only not venture to do, but not even to conceive anything which he would not venture to trumpet to the world.*

774. (1685.) **at,** *but*, denotes emphatic lively opposition, an objection, or a contrast : as, **brevis ā nātūrā nōbīs vīta data est ; at memoria bene redditae vītae sempiterna,** *a short life hath been given by nature unto man ; but the memory of a life laid down in a good cause endureth for ever.*

OTHER WORDS AS CONNECTIVES

775. (1688.) Simple sentences may also be coordinated by words denoting inference or cause, such as **ergō, igitur, itaque,** *therefore ;* **nam, namque, enim, etenim,** *for, for you see :* as,

quā ex rē hominum multitūdō cōgnōscī potuit : nam minus hōrīs tribus mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt, *and from this their numbers could be gauged ; for they made a breastwork in less than three hours.* **nihil est praestantius deō ; ab eō igitur mundum necesse est regī,** *nothing is more excellent than god. Therefore the universe must be governed by him.* Of these words, **nam, namque,** and **itaque** are usually put first in the sentence; **enim** and **igitur,** usually after one word, rarely after two.

THE INTERMEDIATE COORDINATE SENTENCE

776. (1693.) A sentence coordinate in form with another sentence is often equivalent in meaning to a subordinate sentence. Such sentences are called *Intermediate Coordinate Sentences.*

The most varied relations of a subordinate sentence may be thus expressed by a coordinate sentence, and the combination of the two coordinate sentences is in sense equivalent to a complex sentence. Such coordinated sentences are a survival of a more primitive state of the language.

---

777. (1695 ff.) The relation of the two members may not be indicated by the mood, but left to be determined from the context.

Thus, in the combination **amat, sapit,** *he is in love, he shows his sense,* the two members **amat** and **sapit** are alike in form. But in sense, **sapit** is the main member and **amat** is the subordinate member. Just what the relation of the **amat** is, whether it is **sī amat,** *if he is in love,* **cum amat,** *when he is in love,* **quod amat,** *because he is in love,* or **etsī amat,** *though he is in love,* etc., etc., is left to the reader to make out. The following are examples of common combinations :

vix prōram attigerat, rumpit Sāturnia fūnem, *scarce had he touched the prow, Saturnia snaps the rope,* i. e. **cum rumpit. tū quoque māgnam partem opere in tantō, sineret dolor, Īcare, habērēs,** *thou too a goodly space in work so vast, had grief allowed, O Icarus, hadst filled,* i. e. **sī sineret dolor. est locus, Hesperiam Grāī cōgnōmine dīcunt,** *there is a place, the Greeks by name Hesperia call,* i. e. *which they call.*

---

778. (1705.) The subordinate idea is often indicated by the subjunctive of desire coordinated with another verb, usually with one which has a different subject.

Thus, the combination **amēs : oportet,** *you should love; it is right,* in which the two verbs are used separately, blends into one whole, **amēs oportet,** *it is right you should love.*

779. (1706.) The negative employed with coordinated subjunctives is the adverb **nē,** *not.*

Thus, the combination **vidē : nē mē lūdās,** *see to it; don't you fool me* (715), in which the two verbs are used separately, blends into one whole, **vidē nē mē lūdās,** *see to it you don't fool me.* Similarly, **metuō : nē peccet,** *I am afraid; let her not slip up,* becomes **metuō nē peccet,** *I am afraid she may slip up.* From its frequent use in sentences of subordinate meaning, **nē** came at an early period to be regarded as a subordinating

conjunction also, *lest, that . . . not.* Hence members with **nē** are more conveniently treated under the head of subordination (891).

780. (1707.) The subjunctive is often coordinated with verbs of wishing : as, **dē Menedēmō vellem vērum fuisset, dē rēgīnā velim vērum sit,** *about Menedemus I could wish it had been true, about the queen I hope it may be true* (712, 711). **tellūs optem prius īma dehīscat,** *I would the earth to deepest depths might sooner yawn.* These verbs also take the subjunctive with ut ; see 894.

781. (1708.) The subjunctive is often coordinated with verbs of request, exhortation, direction, command : as, **rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat,** *he requests him to make an end of entreaty* (714). **hunc admonet iter cautē faciat,** *he warns him he must pursue his march with care.* **huic imperat quās possit adeat cīvitātēs,** *he orders him to visit such communities as he can.* Many such verbs also take the subjunctive with ut ; see 893.

782. (1709 f.) The subjunctive is often coordinated with expressions of propriety or necessity, such as **oportet** and **necesse est,** or with verbs of concession, such as **licet.**

mē ipsum amēs oportet, nōn mea, *it is myself you should love, not my possessions* (714). **condemnētur necesse est,** *be condemned he needs must.* **fremant omnēs licet, dīcam quod sentiō,** *though everybody may growl, I will say what I think.*

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE, OR SUBORDINATION

783. (1714.) In a complex sentence, that is, one consisting of a main and a subordinate sentence (466), the subordinate member is introduced by some subordinating word: such are,

I. Interrogative words, in indirect questions (810–819); II. Relative pronouns (820–844); III. Relative conjunctive particles, or conjunctive particles not of relative origin (845–945).

784. (1716.) Subordinate sentences which express time are called *Temporal* sentences; condition, cause, or concession, *Conditional, Causal,* or *Concessive* sentences; purpose, *Final* sentences; result, *Consecutive* sentences.

PRIMARY AND SECONDARY TENSES

785. (1717.) The indicative present, future, and future

perfect are called *Primary Tenses;* the indicative imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect are called *Secondary Tenses.* The perfect definite and the present of vivid narration are sometimes regarded as primary tenses, oftener as secondary tenses.

MOOD OF THE SUBORDINATE SENTENCE

786. (1720.) The indicative and the subjunctive are both used in subordinate sentences, as will be shown in the treatment of the several words of subordination. Some general uses may be mentioned collectively here.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD

787. (1721.) The indicative is used in sentences introduced by a relative pronoun, or by a causal conjunctive word other than **cum,** unless there is some special reason for using the subjunctive.

pōntem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī, *he orders the bridge which was near Geneva torn up.* concēdō, quia necesse est, *I give up, because I have to.* In sentences of this class, however, the subjunctive is often required, particularly in indirect discourse (788), or in cases of attraction (793).

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD
THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

788. (1722.) The subjunctive is used in relative, causal, temporal, and conditional sentences in indirect discourse.

789. (1723.) A direct quotation or question gives the words of the original speaker without alteration. When the original words of a quotation or question are changed to conform to the construction of the sentence in which they are quoted, it is called *Indirect Discourse.*

790. (1724.) In indirect discourse, the subjunctive is subordinate to an infinitive or an accusative with the infinitive, dependent on a verb of saying or thinking (961): as,

negat Epicūrus iūcundē posse vīvī, nisi cum virtūte vīvātur, *Epicurus avers there is no living happily, without living virtuously ;* directly, iūcundē vīvī nōn potest, nisi cum virtūte vīvitur. Sōcratēs dīcere solē-bat, omnēs in eō quod scīrent, satis esse ēloquentēs, *Socrates used to maintain that all men were eloquent enough in a matter they knew ;* directly, **omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt ēloquentēs.**

791. (1725.) The idea of saying or thinking is often not formally expressed in the main sentence, and the indirect discourse is intimated by the subordinate subjunctive only : as,

noctū ambulābat in pūblicō Themistoclēs, quod somnum capere nōn posset, *Themistocles used to walk the streets nights, "because he could not sleep,"* given as Themistocles's reason; the writer's would be **poterat.** Paetus omnēs librōs, quōs frāter suus relīquisset, mihī dōnāvit, *Paetus made me a present of all the books "that his brother had left."*

792. For detailed rules governing the use of the moods and tenses in indirect discourse, see 1020–1040.

The Subjunctive of Attraction

793. (1728.) The subjunctive is used in sentences express-ing an essential part of the thought, which are subordinate to another subjunctive, or to an infinitive. This is called the *Subjunctive of Attraction.*

vereor nē, dum minuere velim labōrem, augeam, *I am afraid I may make the work harder, while I am aiming to make it less.* mōs est Athēnīs laudārī in cōntiōne eōs, quī sint in proeliīs interfectī, *it is the cus-tom in Athens to eulogize in public assembly such as have fallen in action.*

The Subjunctive of Repeated Action

794. (1730.) The subjunctive is sometimes used in relative, temporal, or conditional sentences, to express action repeated or occurring at no particular time : as,

neque aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habet auctōritātem, *and if he does not do this, he never has any ascendancy at all over his people.* With the present and perfect, however, this subjunctive is confined principally to the indefinite second person singular : as, bonus sēgnior fit, ubī neg-legās, *the good man always gets slacker, when you are neglectful.* The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive begin with Catullus and Caesar,

and get to be common with Livy and Tacitus: as, **sī quis prehenderētur, cōnsēnsū mīlitum ēripiēbātur,** *every time a man was taken up, he was rescued by the joint action of the rank and file.*

TENSE OF THE SUBORDINATE SENTENCE
THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

795. (1732.) The tense of a subordinate indicative often indicates a close relation of time with. the tense of the leading verb. The subordinate sentence in such combinations is said to have *Relative* time.

796. (1734.) The subordinate indicative tense may express action contemporaneous, antecedent, or subsequent, in relation to the main action : as, **omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī,** *they were out of everything that was serviceable for repairing their vessels.* **cum posuī librum, adsēnsiō omnis ēlābitur,** *when I drop the book, all assent melts away.* **decem diēs sunt ante lūdōs, quōs Cn. Pompēius factūrus est,** *there are ten days before the shows which Pompey is to manage.*

797. (1738.) A subordinate indicative tense is said to be *Independent* when it simply expresses time of its own, without any close relation to the time of the main action.

ut mōs fuit Bīthȳniae rēgibus, lectīcā ferēbātur, *he regularly rode in a litter, as was the practice of the despots of Bithynia ;* here **fuit** denotes action simply as past, without further definition of time (741), whereas **erat,** relative to the time of **ferēbātur,** would imply *which was then the practice* (736).

THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

798. (1741.) The time of the subordinate subjunctive is usually *Relative*, that is, either contemporaneous, antecedent, or subsequent, in relation to that of the main action.

799. (1742.) Action contemporaneous with the main action is expressed by a present or imperfect subjunctive. Action antecedent is expressed by a perfect or a pluperfect subjunctive. Action subsequent is expressed by the future participle with a form of **sim** or of **essem.**

800. (1743.) Subordinate sentences with verbs of will or aim, with verbs of fear, also final sentences and many consecutive sentences are

expressed in Latin as contemporaneous with the main action, not as subsequent to it.

801. (1744.) The main and subordinate sentences may express wholly different spheres of time by tenses not commonly used together, when the thought requires it. In such cases the tense of the subordinate member is called *Independent*, like the analogous tenses of the indicative (797).

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

802. (1745.) The use of subordinate subjunctive tenses relatively to the main tense, or what is commonly called the *Sequence of Tenses*, is as follows:

TENSE SUBORDINATE TO AN INDICATIVE

803. (1746.) The present, or perfect subjunctive, or the future participle with a form of **sim,** is used in sentences subordinate to a primary tense (785): as,

Subordinate to the present tense: **tē hortor, ut Rōmam pergās,** *I urge you to repair to Rome.* **ego quid accēperim sciō,** *I know what I have received.* **quam sum sollicitus quidnam futūrum sit,** *how anxious I am to know what in the world is to come.*

Subordinate to the perfect definite: **in eum locum rēs dēducta est ut salvī esse nequeāmus,** *to such a pass has it come that we cannot be saved.* **an oblītus es quid initiō dīxerim?** *have you possibly forgotten what I said at the start?* **quoniam in eam ratiōnem vītae nōs fōrtūna dēdūxit, ut sempiternus sermō dē nōbīs futūrus sit, caveāmus,** *since fortune has set us in such a walk of life that we are to be eternally talked about, let us be on our guard.*

Subordinate to the future or future perfect: **efficiam, ut intellegātis,** *I will see that you understand.* **dīcent quid statuerint,** *they will tell what they decided on.* **quae fuerit causa, mox vīderō,** *what the reason was I won't consider till by-and-by.*

804. (1747.) The imperfect, or pluperfect subjunctive, or the future participle with a form of **essem,** is used in sentences subordinate to a secondary tense (785): as,

Subordinate to the imperfect tense: **hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut minus lātē vagārentur,** *so it came to pass that they did not roam round much.* **docēbat, ut tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Aeduī tenuissent,** *he showed how the*

Aeduans had had the mastery over all Gaul. **Flaccus quid aliī posteā fac-tūrī essent scīre nōn poterat,** *Flaccus could not tell what other people would do in the future.*

Subordinate to the historical perfect : **is cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent,** *this man prevailed on his com-munity to emigrate from their place of abode, bag and baggage.* **quās rēs in Hispāniā gessisset, disseruit,** *he discoursed on his military career in Spain.* **an Lacedaemoniī quaesīvērunt num sē esset morī prohibitūrus ?** *did the Spartans ask whether he was going to prevent them from dying ?*

Subordinate to the pluperfect : **Ariovistus tantōs sibī spīritūs sūmp-serat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur,** *Ariovistus had put on such high and mighty airs that he seemed intolerable.* **hīc pāgus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat,** *this canton, sallying out from home in our fathers' recollection, had put Cassius, the consul, to death.* **illud quod mihī extrēmum prōposueram, cum essem de bellī genere dictūrus,** *the point I had reserved till the end, when I was going to discourse on the character of the war.*

805. (1752.) The present of vivid narration is commonly regarded as a secondary tense, but sometimes as a primary tense (785) : as,

Aeduī, cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, *the Aeduans, finding they could not defend themselves, send some envoys to Caesar.* **hortātur, ut arma capiant,** *he urges them to fly to arms.*

806. (1755 ff.) An independent (801) present or perfect sub-junctive is sometimes exceptionally put with a main second-ary tense, particularly in clauses of result (905) : as,

in prōvinciā Siciliā, quam iste per triennium ita vēxāvit, ut ea restituī in antīquum statum nūllō modō possit, *in the province of Sicily, which the defendant so effectually tormented three years running that it can-not be restored at all to its original estate.*

The perfect subjunctive sometimes represents the time of the per-fect definite : as, **eō ūsque sē praebēbat patientem atque impigrum, ut eum nēmō umquam in equō sedentem vīderit,** *he showed himself so inde-fatigably active that no human being has ever seen him astride a horse.* Sometimes the time of the historical perfect : as, **temporis tanta fuit exiguitās, ut ad galeās induendās tempus dēfuerit,** *so scant was the time that they had not time to put their helmets on.*

TENSE SUBORDINATE TO A SUBJUNCTIVE

807. (1762.) When the leading verb is a subjunctive, the present is regarded as primary, and the imperfect and pluperfect as secondary: as,

quid prōfēcerim faciās mē velim certiōrem, *how far I have succeeded I wish you would let me know.* quae sī bis bīna quot essent didicisset Epicūrus, certē nōn dīceret, *Epicurus would certainly not say this, if he had ever been taught how much twice two is.*

TENSE SUBORDINATE TO A NOUN OF THE VERB

808. (1766.) A subjunctive subordinate to one of the nouns of the verb (319), except the perfect infinitive or the perfect participle, follows the sequence of the leading verb: as,

dēsinō quaerere cūr ēmerīs, *I cease to ask why you bought.* nēminem tam āmentem fore putāvērunt, ut emeret argentum, *they did not dream anybody would be crazy enough to buy plate.*

809. (1767.) With a perfect infinitive or perfect participle, the subordinate subjunctive may be in the imperfect or pluperfect, even with a primary leading verb: as, satis mihī multa verba fēcisse videor, quā rē esset hōc bellum necessārium, *I fancy I have said enough to show why this war is unavoidable.*

The Indirect Question

810. (1773 f.) The subjunctive is used in indirect questions or exclamations.

Thus, when the direct question, quī scīs? *how do you know?* is subordinated to a main sentence, such as quaero, *I ask*, the scīs becomes sciās: quaerō quī sciās, *I ask how you know.* Questions or exclamations thus subordinated are called *Indirect* (789). The indirect question is one of the commonest of constructions. It depends on verbs or expressions meaning not only *ask*, but also *tell, see, hear, know, wonder*, etc., etc.

YES OR NO QUESTIONS

811. (1775.) Indirect Yes or No questions are introduced by the same interrogative particles that are used in direct

questions (698). But in indirect questions, **num** and **-ne** are used without any essential difference, in the sense of *whether, if.* **nōnne** is used thus with **quaerō**: as,

> **quaesīvī cōgnōsceretne sīgnum,** *I asked if he recognized the seal.*
> **quaerō nōnne tibī faciendum idem sit,** *I ask whether you ought not to do the same.* **vidēte num dubitandum vōbīs sit,** *consider whether you ought to have any hesitation.*

812. (1777.) A conditional protasis with **sī**, *if, to see if,* sometimes takes the place of an indirect question in expressions of hope, or expectation : as, **exspectābam sī quid scrīberēs,** *I was waiting to see whether you would write anything.* **circumfunduntur hostēs, sī quem aditum reperīre possent,** *the enemy came streaming round, to see if they could find any way of getting in.*

ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS

813. (1778.) Indirect alternative questions are introduced like direct questions (705). But when the second member is negative, it has oftener **necne** than an **nōn**: as,

> **quaesīvī ā Catilīnā in conventū fuisset, necne,** *I asked Catiline whether he had been at the meeting or not.* **permultum interest utrum perturbātiōne animī, an cōnsultō fīat iniūria,** *it makes a vast difference whether wrong be done in heat of passion, or with deliberate intent.*

814. (1782.) The second member only of an alternative question is often expressed after **haud sciō an**, *I don't know but, possibly, perhaps :* as,

> **haud sciō an fierī possit,** *I don't know but it is possible.* Similarly with **nesciō an, dubitō an,** etc. : as, **ēloquentiā nesciō an habuisset parem nēminem,** *in oratory I fancy he would have had no peer.*

PRONOUN QUESTIONS

815. (1785.) Indirect pronoun questions are introduced by the same pronominal words that are used in direct pronoun questions (706): as,

> **cōgnōscit, quae gerantur,** *he ascertains what is going on.* **vidētis ut omnēs dēspiciat,** *you can see how he looks down on everybody.*

ORIGINAL SUBJUNCTIVES

816. (1786.) Questions already in the subjunctive may also become

indirect. Thus, **quō mē vertam?** *which way shall I turn?* (723) becomes indirect in **quō mē vertam nesciō,** *I don't know which way I am to turn.*

INDICATIVE QUESTIONS APPARENTLY INDIRECT

817. (1787.) In poetry, the indicative sometimes occurs where the subjunctive might be used: as, **adspice, ut ingreditur,** *see, how he marches off*.

818. (1788.) The indicative is used with **nesciō,** followed by a pronominal interrogative, when this combination is equivalent to an indefinite pronoun or adverb: as, **prōdit nesciō quis,** *there's some one coming out*. This is a condensed form for **prōdit nesciō quis sit,** *there's coming out I don't know who it is,* the real question, **sit,** being suppressed, and **nesciō quis** acquiring the meaning of **aliquis,** *somebody*.

819. (1791.) Relative constructions often have the appearance of indirect questions, and care must be taken not to confound the two. Thus, **nōstī quae sequuntur,** *you know the things that follow,* i. e. not *what follows*.

The Relative Sentence

820. (1792 f.) Relative sentences are introduced by relative words, the most important of which is the pronoun **qui,** *who, which,* or *that.*

The relative adverbs, **ubǐ, quō, unde,** often take the place of a relative pronoun with a preposition.

821. (1795.) The relative pronoun, like the English relative *who, which,* was developed from the interrogative. Originally, the relative sentence precedes, and the main sentence follows, just as in question and answer.

Thus, **quae mūtat, ea corrumpit,** *what he changes, that he spoils,* is a modification of the older question and answer: **quae mūtat? ea corrumpit,** *what does he change? that he spoils.*

822. (1796.) The relative sentence usually comes last. Hence, the substantive of the main sentence is called the *Antecedent:* as,

ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, *beyond the place in which place the Germans had established themselves, he selected a suitable spot for his camp.* The three

words **diēs, locus,** and **rēs,** are very commonly expressed thus both in the antecedent and the relative sentence.

823. (1799.) The antecedent is often omitted when it is indefinite, or is obvious from the context : as,

    dēlēgistī quōs Rōmae relinquerēs, *you picked out people to leave in Rome.* **Caesar cōgnōvit Cōnsidium, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibī renūntiāvisse,** *Caesar ascertained that Considius had reported to him as seen what he had not seen.*

<center>AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE</center>

824. (1802.) A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the construction of the sentence in which it stands : as,

    Hippiās glōriātus est ānulum quem habēret, pallium quō amictus, soccōs quibus indūtus esset, sē suā manū cōnfēcisse, *Hippias prided himself that he had made with his own hand the ring that he wore, the cloak in which he was wrapped, and the slippers that he had on.*

825. (1803.) When the relative refers to two or more antecedents of different gender, its gender is determined like that of a predicate adjective. See 478-481.

826. (1806.) With verbs of indeterminate meaning (460), the relative pronoun sometimes agrees with the predicate substantive : as, **Thēbae ipsae, quod Boeōtiae caput est,** *Thebes itself, which is the capital of Boeotia.* Often, however, with the antecedent : as, **flūmen quod appellātur Tamesis,** *the river which is called the Thames.*

827. (1807.) When the relative is subject, its verb agrees with the person of the antecedent : as,

    haec omnia is fēcī, quī sodālis Dolābellae eram, *all this I did, I that was Dolabella's bosom friend.* So also when the antecedent is implied in a possessive : as, **cum tū nostrā, quī remānsissēmus, caede tē contentum esse dīcēbās,** *when you said you were satisfied with murdering us, who had staid behind.*

828. (1809.) A new substantive added in explanation of an antecedent is put after the relative, and in the same case : as, **ad Amānum contendī, quī mōns erat hostium plēnus,** *I pushed on to Amanus, a mountain that was packed with the enemy.*

829. (1810.) An adjective, especially a comparative, superlative, or

<center>176</center>

numeral, explanatory of a substantive in the main sentence, is often put in the relative sentence : as,

palūs quae perpetua intercēdēbat Rōmānōs ad īnsequendum tardābat, *a morass, that lay unbroken between, hindered the Romans from pursuit.* **dē servīs suīs quem habuit fidēlissimum, ad rēgem mīsit,** *of his slaves he sent the king the most trusty that he had.*

830. (1811.) When reference is made to the substance of a sentence, the neuter **quod** is used, or more commonly **id quod,** either usually in parenthesis : as,

intellegitur, id quod iam ante dīxī, imprūdente L. Sūllā scelera haec fierī, *it is plain, as I have said once before, that these crimes are committed without the cognizance of Sulla.*

MOODS IN THE RELATIVE SENTENCE

831. (1812.) The relative is sometimes equivalent to a conditional protasis. When thus used, it may have either the indicative or the subjunctive, as the sense requires : as,

quisquis hūc vēnerit, pūgnōs edet, *whoever comes this way shall have a taste of fists* (933). **haec quī videat, nōnne cōgātur cōnfitērī deōs esse?** *whoso should see this would be forced, wouldn't he? to admit the existence of gods* (936). **quī vidēret, equum Trōiānum intrōductum dīceret,** *whoever saw it would have sworn it was the Trojan horse brought in* (938).

THE INDICATIVE MOOD

832. (1813.) The indicative is used in simple declarations or descriptions introduced by a relative : as,

reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē alunt, *the others, that stay at home, support themselves.* **quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat,** *to such as he saw in stress, he kept sending reinforcements.*

833. (1814.) The indicative is also used with indefinite relative pronouns and adverbs : as, **quisquis est,** *whoever he may be.* **quācumque iter fēcit,** *wherever he made his way.*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

834. (1816.) Relative pronoun sentences take the subjunctive to denote (1.) a purpose, (2.) a characteristic or result, (3.) a cause or a concession.

M   177

SENTENCES OF PURPOSE

835. (1817.) Relative sentences of purpose are equivalent to subjunctive sentences introduced by **ut,** *in order that, to* (891): as,

ea quī cōnficeret, C. Trebōnium relinquit, *he left Trebonius to manage this.* quālis esset nātūra montis, quī cōgnōscerent, mīsit, *he sent some scouts to ascertain what the character of the mountain was.* Sentences of purpose are an extension of the subjunctive of desire (710).

SENTENCES OF CHARACTERISTIC OR RESULT

836. (1818.) Relative sentences of characteristic or result are equivalent to subjunctive sentences introduced by **ut,** *so as to, so that* (891).

neque is sum, quī mortis perīculō terrear, *but I am not the man to be scared by danger of death, no not I.* secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent, *there followed a succession of storms to keep our people in camp.* Sentences of result are an extension of the subjunctive of action conceivable (717).

837. (1819.) This subjunctive with quī is often used with **dīgnus, indīgnus,** or **idōneus,** usually with a form of **sum:** as, Līviānae fābulae nōn satis dīgnae quae iterum legantur, *the plays of Livius are not worth reading twice.* nōn erit idōneus quī ad bellum mittātur, *he will not be a fit person to be sent to the war.*

838. (1821 f.) Relative sentences after assertions or questions of existence or non-existence usually take the subjunctive: as,

sunt quī putent, *there be people to think,* or *some people think.* nēmō est quī nesciat, *there is nobody that doesn't know.* sapientia est ūna quae maestitiam pellat ex animīs, *wisdom is the only thing to drive sadness from the soul.* Such expressions taking this subjunctive are: est quī; sunt quī; nēmō est quī; quis est quī; sōlus or ūnus est quī; est or nihil est quod, etc., etc.

SENTENCES OF CAUSE OR CONCESSION

839. (1824.) Relative sentences of cause or of concession

178

are equivalent to subjunctive sentences introduced by **cum,** *since, though* (863): as,

hospes, quī nihil suspicārētur, hominem retinēre coepit, *the friend, since he suspected nothing, undertook to hold on to the man.* **ō fōrtūnāte adulēscēns, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēnerīs,** *oh youth thrice-blest, with Homer trumpeter of thy prowess.* **Cicerō, quī mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset, quīnque cohortēs frūmentātum mittit,** *though Cicero had kept his men in camp, he sends five cohorts foraging.*

840. (1827.) The causal relative is often introduced by **quippe,** less frequently by **ut,** or **ut pote,** *naturally:* as, " **convīvia cum patre nōn inībat ;** " **quippe quī nē in oppidum quidem nisi perrārō venīret,** " *he never went to dinner - parties with his father ;*" *why, of course not, since he never went to a simple country town even, except very rarely.*

841. (1829.) The subjunctive is used in parenthetical sentences of restriction : as, **quod sciam,** *to the best of my knowledge and belief.* **quod sine molestiā tuā fīat,** *as far as may be without trouble to yourself.*

CORRELATIVE SENTENCES

842. (1831.) Sentences are said to be *correlative* when a relative pronoun or adverb has a corresponding determinative or demonstrative pronoun or adverb in the main sentence.

Thus, the ordinary correlative of **quī** is **is,** less frequently **hīc, ille, īdem.** Similarly **tot . . . quot** are used as correlatives; also **quō . . . eō, quantō . . . tantō; quantum . . . tantum; tam . . . quam; totiēns . . . quotiēns; tālis . . . quālis; ubī . . . ibī; ut : . . ita, sīc,** or **item; cum . . . tum.**

THE RELATIVE INTRODUCING A MAIN SENTENCE

843. (1835.) Besides the ordinary use of the relative, to introduce a subordinate sentence, it is often used like **hīc,** or **is,** or like **et is, is autem, is enim,** or **is igitur,** to append a fresh main sentence or period to the foregoing : as,

cōnsiliō convocātō sententiās exquīrere coepit, quō in cōnsiliō nōnnūllae hūius modī sententiae dīcēbantur, *calling a council of war, he proceeded to ask their opinion, and in this council some opinions of the following import were set forth.* **centuriōnēs hostēs vocāre coepērunt;**

quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō, *the officers proceeded to call the enemy ; but not a man of them ventured to step forward.*

844. (1836.) From this use of the relative come many introductory formulas, such as **quō factō, quā rē cōgnitā, quae cum ita sint,** etc., etc.

The Conjunctional Sentence

845. Conjunctional sentences are introduced by the following particles, called conjunctive particles (783) : **quod, quia ; cum ; quoniam ; quam ; quamquàm, quamvīs ; antequam, priusquam, postquam, ubĭ ; ut (nē) ; quō, quōminus ; quīn ; dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū ; quandō ; sī.**

---

quod

846. (1838.) The conjunctive particle **quod** has both a declarative sense, *that*, and a causal sense, *because.* In both senses it regularly introduces the indicative (787). For special reasons, however, the subjunctive is often used, and particularly in indirect discourse (788).

847. (1842.) **quod,** *as to what*, or *that*, is used, especially at the beginning of a sentence, to introduce a fact on which something is to be said, often by way of protest or refutation : as,

vērum quod tū dīcis, nōn tē mī īrāscī decet, *but as to what you say, it isn't right that you should get provoked with me.* **quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī causā facere,** *as to his moving a great many Germans over to Gaul, that he did for self-protection* (788).

848. (1844 f.) quod, *that, the fact that*, is often used in subordinate sentences which serve to complete the sense of the main sentence.

The sentence with **quod** may represent a subject, as with **accēdit ;** an object, as with **praetereō,** etc. ; frequently it is in apposition with a demonstrative or an appellative : as,

accēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstrāctōs dolēbant, *there was added this fact, that they lamented that their own children were torn from them ;* or less clumsily, *then too they lamented.* **Caesar senātūs in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū,** *Caesar told off the kindnesses of the senate to the man, the fact that " he had been styled king by the senate"* (788). **duās rēs cōnsecūtus est, quod animōs centuriōnum dēvinxit et mīlitum voluntātēs redēmit,** *thus he*

killed two birds with one stone : he won the hearts of the officers, and he bought golden opinions of the rank and file.

849. (1850.) With verbs of doing or happening, accompanied by some word of manner (as **bene** or **male**), quod introduces a verb of coincident action : as,

bene facis quod mē adiuvās, *you are very kind in helping me.* **accidit perincommodē quod eum nusquam vīdistī,** *unfortunately it happened that you saw him nowhere.*

850. (1851.) quod, *that,* is sometimes used to denote cause with verbs of emotion : as, **gaudeō quod tē interpellāvī,** *I'm glad that I interrupted you.* Such verbs are: **gaudeō, laetor; mīror; doleō, īrāscor,** etc. For the accusative with the infinitive, see 964.

851. (1853.) Causal **quod** (or **quia**), *because,* introduces a cause, or a reason or motive : as,

With the indicative (787) : **Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cōtīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt,** *the Helvetians outshine the rest of the Gauls in bravery, because they do battle with the Germans almost every day.* **T. Mānlius Torquātus fīlium suum, quod is contrā imperium in hostem pūgnāverat, necārī iūssit,** *Torquatus ordered his own son to be put to death, because the young man had fought with the enemy contrary to orders.* Here **pūgnāvisset** would have given the reason as the father's (791), not the writer's.

With the subjunctive, on the principle of indirect discourse (791) : **noctū ambulābat in pūblicō Themistoclēs, quod somnum capere nōn posset,** *Themistocles used to walk the streets nights,* " *because he could not sleep,*" given as Themistocles's reason; the writer's would be **poterat.** Sometimes a verb of saying or thinking is put, illogically, in the subjunctive: as, **Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō arbitriō bellum esse gestūrōs dīcerent,** *the Bellovacans would not put in their proper quota, saying they meant to make war on their own responsibility.*

852. (1855.) An untenable reason is introduced by **nōn quod, nōn quō,** or **nōn quia.** The valid reason follows, with **sed quod, sed quia,** or with **sed** and a fresh main sentence.

The mood is usually subjunctive (788) : as, **pugilēs ingemīscunt, nōn quod doleant, sed quia prōfundendā vōce omne corpus intenditur,** *boxers grunt and groan, not because they feel pain, but because by explosion of voice the whole system gets braced up.* The negative *not that . . . not,* is expressed by **nōn quod nōn, nōn quō nōn,** or **nōn quīn.**

cum

853. (1859.) **cum**, used as a conjunctive particle (783), has a temporal meaning, *when*, which readily passes over to an explanatory or causal meaning, *in that, since* or *although*.

TEMPORAL cum

WITH THE INDICATIVE

854. (1860.) **cum**, *when, whenever, if*, of indefinite time, may introduce any tense of the indicative required by the context: as,

Rōmae videor esse, cum tuās litterās legō, *I always fancy myself in Rome, when I am reading a letter from you.* **hīs cum fūnēs comprehēnsī adductīque erant, praerumpēbantur,** *every time the lines were caught by these and hauled taut, they would part.* The subjunctive is used, chiefly by late writers, rarely by Cicero and Caesar, to express repeated past action (794): as, **cum in convīvium vēnisset, sī quicquam caelātī adspexerat, manūs abstinēre nōn poterat,** *when he went to a dinner party, if he ever caught sight of a bit of chased work, he never could keep his hands off.*

855. (1862.) **cum**, *when*, of definite time, regularly introduces the indicative of any action not of past time: as,

sed dē hīs etiam rēbus, ōtiōsī cum erimus, loquēmur, *but we will talk of this when we have time.* **cum ego P. Grānium testem prōdūxerō, refellitō, sī poteris,** *when I put Granius on the witness stand, refute him if you can.*

856. (1863 ff.) With **cum**, *when*, the indicative is used of definite past time to date the action of the main clause: as,

cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterīus factiōnis prīncipēs erant Aeduī, *when Caesar came to Gaul, the leaders of one party were the Aeduans:* **eō cum veniō, praetor quiēscēbat,** *when I got there, the praetor was taking a nap* (733). **"per tuās statuās" vērō cum dīxit, vehementius rīsimus,** *but when he uttered the words "by your statues," we burst into a louder laugh.*

857. (1869.) An indicative clause with **cum**, usually expressing sudden or unexpected action, sometimes contains the

main idea, and is put last. The main clause often contains
vix, aegrē, *hardly,* or **nōndum,** *not yet.*

dīxerat hōc ille, cum puer nūntiāvit venīre Laelium, *scarcely had he
said this, when a slave announced that Laelius was coming.* **vix ea fātus
eram, gemitū cum tālia reddit,** *scarce had I spoke the words, when with a
groan he answers thus.*

858. (1872.) With **cum,** *when,* the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is used to describe the circumstances under which the action of the main clause took
place: as,

Antigonus in proeliō, cum adversus Seleucum et Lȳsimachum dīmicāret, occīsus est, *Antigonus was killed in battle fighting against Seleucus
and Lysimachus.* **hīc pāgus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat,** *this canton, sallying out from
home in our fathers' recollection, had put Cassius, the consul, to death.*
**cum rēx Pyrrhus populō Rōmānō bellum intulisset cumque dē imperiō
certāmen esset cum rēge potentī, perfuga ab eō vēnit in castra Fabriciī,**
*king Pyrrhus having made war on the Roman nation, and there being a
struggle for sovereignty with a powerful king, a deserter from him came
into Fabricius's camp.* In this use, as the examples show, **cum** with
the subjunctive is often best translated by a participle in *-ing.*

859. (1873.) The difference in meaning between **cum** with the indicative and **cum** with the subjunctive may be illustrated by the following
examples:

Gallō nārrāvī, cum proximē Rōmae fuī, quid audīssem, *I told Gallus,
when I was last in Rome, what I had heard* (856). **a. d. III kal. Māiās
cum essem in Cūmānō, accēpī tuās litterās,** *I received your letter on the
twenty-ninth of April, being in my villa at Cumae* (858).

EXPLANATORY AND CAUSAL **cum**

860. (1874.) The indicative is often used with explanatory **cum** when
the action of the clause with **cum** is coincident with that of the main
clause. In this use, **cum** passes from the meaning of *when* to *that* or *in
that:* as,

cum quiēscunt, probant, *in that they are inactive, they approve,* i. e.
their inaction is approval. **cum tacent, clāmant,** *their silence is as telling as a shout.* For a similar use of **quod,** see 849.

861. (1875.) Explanatory **cum** is also used with verbs of emotion ; likewise with **grātulor** and **grātiās agō**: as, **grātulor tibĭ, cum tantum valēs apud Dolābellam,** *I give you joy that you stand so well with Dolabella.* **tibĭ māximās grātiās agō, cum tantum litterae meae potuērunt,** *I thank you most heartily in that my letter had such influence.* For similar uses of **quod**, see 850.

862. (1876.) Explanatory **cum** is also used in the sense of *since, although,* or *even though.*

863. (1877.) **cum,** *since, although, even though,* usually introduces the subjunctive: as,

Aeduĭ cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, *since the Aeduans could not defend themselves, they sent ambassadors to Caesar.* **fuit perpetuō pauper, cum dīvitissimus esse posset,** *he was always poor, whereas he might have been very rich.* **ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibĭ tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat,** *Cicero himself, though he was in extremely delicate health, did not allow himself even the night-time for rest.*

<center>cum . . . tum</center>

864. (1881.) A clause with **cum** is often followed by an emphatic main clause introduced by **tum**.

cum collēgae levāvit īnfāmiam, tum sibĭ glōriam ingentem peperit, *he relieved his colleague from disgrace, and what is more he won mighty glory for himself.* By abridgement of the sentence, **cum . . . tum** come to be copulative conjunctions (755): as, **mōvit patrēs cōnscrīptōs cum causa tum auctor,** *both the cause and its supporter touched the conscript fathers.*

<center>quoniam</center>

865. (1882.) **quoniam,** compounded of **quom** (the older form of **cum**) and **iam,** *when now,* refers primarily to time, but is seldom so used. The temporal meaning passed into an exclusively causal meaning, *since.* In both meanings it regularly introduces the indicative (787). For special reasons, however, the subjunctive is used, as in indirect discourse (788).

866. (1884.) **quoniam,** *since, seeing that, now that,* introduces a reason : as,

With the indicative : **vōs, Quirītēs, quoniam iam nox est, in vestra tecta discēdite,** *do you, citizens, since it is now grown dark, depart and*

<center>184</center>

go to your own several homes. **quoniam dē genere bellī dīxī, nunc dē māgnitūdine pauca dīcam,** *since I have finished speaking about the character of the war, I will now speak briefly about its extent.*

With the subjunctive in indirect discourse (791): **crēbrīs Pompēī litterīs castīgābantur, quoniam prīmō venientem Caesarem nōn prohibuissent,** *they were rebuked in numerous letters of Pompey, "because they had not kept Caesar off as soon as he came."*

---

quam

867. (1888.) **quam,** *as* or *than,* introduces the indicative in sentences of comparison. For special reasons, however, the subjunctive is used, as of action conceivable; see 871.

But usually sentences of comparison are abridged by the omission of the verb (617).

WITH THE INDICATIVE

868. (1889.) **quam,** *as,* is used in a comparative sentence, generally with **tam** as correlative in the main clause: as,

quid est ōrātōrī tam necessārium quam vōx ? *what is so indispensable to the speaker as voice?* **nōn minus . . . quam,** *no less than, just as much,* or **nōn magis . . . quam,** *just as little* or *just as much,* is often preferred to **tam . . . quam**: as, **nōn magis mihī deerit inimīcus quam Verrī dēfuit,** *I shall lack an enemy as little as Verres did.*

869. (1892.) The highest possible degree is expressed by **quam** and a superlative with or without a form of **possum** (679): as,

quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam contendit, *he pushes into Gaul by as rapid marches as he can.* **cōnstituērunt iūmentōrum quam māximum numerum coēmere,** *they determined to buy up the greatest possible number of beasts of burden.*

870. (1894.) **quam,** *than,* is used in a comparative sentence, with a comparative in the main clause: as,

plūra dīxī quam voluī, *I have said more than I intended.* **doctrīna paulō dūrior quam nātūra patitur,** *principles somewhat sterner than nature doth support.* **potius sērō quam numquam,** *better late than never.*

WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE

871. (1896.) The subjunctive of action conceivable (717) is

used with **quam** or **quam ut** after comparatives denoting dis-
proportion : as,

quicquid erat oneris Segestānīs impōnēbat, aliquantō amplius quam
ferre possent, *he would impose every possible burden on the Segestans, far
too much for them to bear.* quis nōn intellegit Canachī sīgna rigidiōra
esse, quam ut imitentur vēritātem? *who does not feel that the statues of
Canachus are too stiff to be true to nature?*

---

quamquam

872. (1900.) **quamquam**, *although*, introduces the indicative
in the concession of a definite fact : as,

quamquam premuntur aere aliēnō, dominātiōnem tamen exspectant,
*though they are staggering under debt, they yet look forward to being
lords and masters.* quamquam nōn vēnit ad fīnem tam audāx inceptum,
tamen haud omnīnō vānum fuit, *though the bold attempt did not attain its
purpose, yet it was not altogether fruitless.*

873. (1900.) In poetry and late prose, **quamquam**, *although*, may in-
troduce the subjunctive in the concession of a definite fact: as, **haud
cunctātus est Germānicus, quamquam fingī ea intellegeret,** *Germanicus
did not delay, though he was aware this was all made up.*

---

quamvīs

874. (1903.) **quam vīs** or **quamvīs** is used as an indefinite adverb, *as
much as you please,* and is often joined with an adjective or other adverb
to take the place of a superlative: as,

quamvīs paucī adīre audent, *the merest handful dares attack.* quam-
vīs callidē, *ever so craftily.* From an adverb, **quamvīs** became a con-
junction (875).

875. (1905.) The subjunctive with the conjunction **quam-
vīs**, *however much, though,* denotes action merely assumed :
as,

quamvīs sint hominēs quī Cn. Carbōnem ōderint, tamen hī dēbent quid
metuendum sit cōgitāre, *though there may be men who hate Carbo, still
these men ought to consider what they have to fear.* nōn enim possīs,
quamvīs excellās, *you may not have the power, however eminent you
may be.*

876. (1906.) **quamvīs,** *even if, though,* is also sometimes used with the indicative : as, **erat dīgnitāte rēgiā, quamvīs carēbat nōmine,** *he had the authority of a king, though not the title.*

---

antequam, priusquam

877. (1911.) **antequam** and **priusquam** accompany both the indicative and the subjunctive.

ante and **prius** properly belong to the main clause, and regularly stand with it if it is negative ; but otherwise they are usually attracted to the subordinate clause.

878. (1915.) In present or future statements, **antequam** and **priusquam** introduce a present, either indicative or subjunctive; in future statements the future perfect is also used : as,

antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dīcam, *before I come back to the motion, I will say a little about myself.* **antequam veniat in Pontum, litterās ad Cn. Pompēium mittet,** *before he reaches Pontus, he will send a letter to Pompey.* **sī quid mihī acciderit priusquam hōc tantum malī vīderō,** *if anything shall befall me before I see this great calamity.*

879. (1917.) In past statements **antequam** and **priusquam** introduce the perfect indicative; or, less frequently, an imperfect subjunctive: as,

omnia ista ante facta sunt quam iste Ītaliam attigit, *all these incidents occurred before the defendant set foot in Italy.* **neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt,** *and they did not stay their flight before they fairly arrived at the Rhine.* **antequam cōnsulēs in Etrūriam pervenīrent, Gallī vēnērunt,** *before the consuls arrived in Etruria, the Gauls came.* This use of the imperfect subjunctive must be confounded with that mentioned in 880.

880. (1919 f.) When the action did not occur, or when purpose is expressed, **priusquam** regularly introduces the imperfect subjunctive in past statements : as,

plērīque interfectī sunt, priusquam occultum hostem vidērent, *most of them were slain before they could see the hidden enemy.* **pervēnit priusquam Pompēius sentīre posset,** *he arrived before Pompey should be able to learn of his coming.* The pluperfect subjunctive is rarely introduced by **antequam** or **priusquam** : as, **āvertit equōs in castra priusquam pābula**

187

gustāssent Trōiae Xanthumque bibissent, *he drave the horses off to camp, or ever they should taste of Troja's grass and Xanthus drink.*

---

postquam, ubĭ, ut, cum prīmum, simul atque

881. (1925.) In narration the perfect indicative is regularly used in clauses introduced by **postquam, ubĭ, ut, cum prīmum, simul atque** : as,

postquam tuās litterās lēgī, Postumia tua mē convēnit, *after I read your letter, your Postumia called on me.* ubĭ sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit, graviter eōs accūsat, *when he came to see that he was put off a good while, he takes them roundly to task.* cum prīmum Crētae lītus attigit, nūntiōs mīsit, *as soon as he touched the shore of Crete, he sent messengers.* quem simul atque oppidānī cōnspēxērunt, mūrum complēre coepērunt, *as soon as the garrison espied him, they began to man the wall.*

882. (1926.) The present indicative of vivid narration (733) sometimes occurs: as, ubĭ neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit, *neither party taking the initiative in crossing, Caesar marched his men back to camp.*

883. (1929.) The pluperfect, less frequently the perfect, with **postquam** is used attributively with nouns denoting time.

In this use **post** is often separated from **quam**, and two constructions are possible: Ablative: annō post quam vōta erat aedēs Monētae dēdicātur, *the temple of Moneta is dedicated a year after it was vowed.* Accusative, with an ordinal, and **post** as a preposition: post diem tertium gesta rēs est quam dīxerat, *the deed was done the next day but one after he said it.*

884. (1930.) The imperfect with **postquam** expresses action continuing into the time of the main action. Such a clause usually denotes the cause of the main action: as, Appius, postquam nēmō adībat, domum sē recēpit, *Appius finding that nobody presented himself, went back home.*

885. (1932.) ubĭ, ut, or simul atque (ac) often introduces a clause denoting indefinite or repeated action: as,

omnēs profectō mulierēs tē amant, ut quaeque aspēxit, *all the ladies love you, every time one spies you.* Messānam ut quisque nostrum vēnerat, haec vīsere solēbat, *any Roman, who visited Messana, invariably went to see these statues.* hostēs, ubĭ aliquōs singulārēs cōnspēxerant,

adoriēbantur, *every time the enemy saw some detached parties, they would charge.* The subjunctive also is found with **ubĭ** and **ut quisque** in cases of repeated past action (794).

886. (1924.) In clauses introduced by **posteā quam** or **postquam**, the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is rarely used : as, **quī posteā quam māximās aedificāsset classēs et sē Bosporānīs bellum īnferre simulāret, lēgātōs mīsit,** *after building enormous fleets, pretending he was going to make war on the Bosporani, he sent envoys.*

---

utī or ut

887. (1935.) **utī** or **ut,** used as a conjunctive particle, accompanies both the indicative and the subjunctive.

WITH THE INDICATIVE
ut, *as*

888. (1937.) The indicative is used in a comparative clause introduced by **utī** or **ut,** *as,*

perge ut īnstituistī, *go on as you have begun.* **ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs,** *as you sow, y'are like to reap.*

889. (1939.) **ut quisque,** commonly with a superlative, is used in a comparative period of equality, with **ita** or **sīc** and commonly another superlative in the main clause : as, **ut quaeque rēs est turpissima, sīc māximē vindicanda est,** *the more disgraceful a thing is, the more emphatically does it call for punishment.*

890. (1940.) **ut** often introduces a parenthetical idea, particularly a general truth or a habit which accounts for the special fact expressed in the main sentence : as,

excitābat flūctūs in simpulō, ut dīcitur, Grātidius, *Gratidius was raising a tempest in a teapot, as the saying is.* **hōrum auctōritāte adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita cōnsilia, Trebium retinent,** *influenced by these people they detain Trebius, as might have been expected, sudden resolutions being always characteristic of the Gauls.*

WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE
utī or ut
NEGATIVE ut nē, nē, or ut nōn

891. (1947.) The subjunctive with **ut** is : (A.) That of action desired (710), in clauses of purpose ; in these the negative is **nē** (779), or

sometimes **ut nē**, and *and that not*, **nēve** or **neu**, rarely **neque** or **nec**. **ut nōn** is used when the negative belongs to a single word. (B.) That of action conceivable (717), in clauses of result; in these the negative is **ut nōn, ut nēmō, ut nūllus**, etc.

892. (1948.) Final and consecutive clauses with **ut** are of two classes: I. Complementary clauses, that is, such as are necessary to complete the sense of certain specific verbs or expressions; such clauses have the value of a substantive, and may represent a subject, an object, or any oblique case. II. Pure final or consecutive clauses, in which the purpose or result of any action may be expressed, and which are not essential to complete the sense of a verb.

PURPOSE
COMPLEMENTARY FINAL CLAUSES

893. (1949.) The subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** is used in clauses which serve to complete the sense of verbs of will or aim.

894. (1950.) Verbs of will include those of desire, request, advice, resolution, command, or permission.

Will may be suggested by a general verb or expression, of which some of the commonest are: desire: **volō (mālō), optō**. request: **petō, postulō, flāgitō, ōrō, rogō, precor**. advice: **suādeō, persuādeō**, *persuade*, **moneō**, *bid*, **admoneō, hortor, cēnseō**, *propose, vote*. resolution: **dēcernō, cōnstituō, placet**. command: **imperō, praecipiō, mandō**. permission: **concēdō, permittō, nōn patior**.

895. (1951.) Verbs of aim include those of striving, accomplishing, or inducing; such are:

striving: **id agō, operam dō, labōrō, nītor, contendō, studeō**. accomplishing: **faciō (efficiō, perficiō), impetrō**. inducing: **moveō, excitō, impellō**.

Examples

With verbs of will: **Ubiī ōrābant, ut sibī auxilium ferret**, *the Ubians begged that he would help them*. **hortātus est utī in officiō manēret**, *he urged him to remain steadfast in duty*. **suīs imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum rēicerent**, *he ordered his men not to throw any weapon at all back*. **huic permīsit, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem conlocāret**, *he allowed this man to quarter his legion in these parts*.

With verbs of aim : **neque id agere ut exercitum teneat ipse, sed nē illī habeant quō contrā sē utī possint,** *and that his object was not to hold the army himself, but to prevent the other side from having an army which they could use against him.* XII **nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset effēcit,** *a dozen vessels were lost, but he managed to sail comfortably with the rest.* **Aulum spē pactiōnis perpulit, utī in abditās regiōnēs sēsē īnsequerētur,** *Aulus he induced by the hope of a pecuniary settlement to follow him to distant regions.*

896. (1952 f.) Many of these verbs often have a coordinated subjunctive (778–782). The verbs of resolving, **statuō, cōnstituō,** and **dēcernō,** and of striving, **nītor,** and **temptō,** have usually the complementary infinitive (955), unless a new subject is introduced. For **volō (mālō),** and **cupiō,** see also 965; for **iubeō, vetō, sinō,** and **patior,** 968.

897. (1957.) The subjunctive with ut or nē is used in clauses which complete expressions of fear, anxiety, or danger.

ut, *that not, may not,* and **nē,** *lest, may,* were originally signs of a wish (710): thus, **vereor, ut fīat,** *I am afraid; may it come to pass,* acquires the meaning of *I am afraid it may not come to pass* (779) ; and **vereor, nē fīat,** *I am afraid; may it not come to pass,* of *I am afraid it may come to pass.*

at vereor ut plācārī possit, *but I'm afraid she can't be reconciled.* **nē uxor rescīscat metuit,** *he is afraid his wife may find it out.* **metuō nē nōs nōsmet perdiderimus uspiam,** *I'm afraid we've lost ourselves somewhere.* **nē nōn** is often used for **ut,** and regularly when the expression of fear is negative : as, **nōn vereor nē hōc officium meum P. Servīliō nōn probem,** *I have no fear but I may make my services acceptable in the eyes of Servilius.*

898. (1960.) The subjunctive with **nē** is used in clauses which serve to complete the sense of verbs of avoiding, hindering, and resisting.

Such are the following which often have **quōminus** (909): **dēterreō, impediō, prohibeō, teneō, resistō, recūsō.** Some of the above verbs when preceded by a negative also take **quīn** (913).

per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit, *thanks to this display of retainers he succeeded in avoiding trial.* **plūra nē scrībam, dolōre impedior,** *grief prevents me from writing more.* **nē qua sibī statua pōnerētur restitit,** *he objected to having a statue erected in his honor.*

899. (1961.) The subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** is used to denote the purpose of the main action.

vigilās dē nocte, ut tuīs cōnsultōribus respondeās, *you have to get up early in the morning to give advice to your clients.* māiōrēs nostrī ab arātrō addūxērunt Cincinnātum, ut dictātor esset, *our fathers brought Cincinnatus from his plough, to be dictator.* Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, ad exercitum proficīscitur, *to avoid facing war on a more formidable scale, Caesar goes to the army.*

900. (1962.) The present subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** is often used not to express the purpose of the main action, but parenthetically, to introduce the main action: as, ut in pauca cōnferam, testāmentō factō mulier moritur, *to cut a long story short, the woman makes her will and dies.*

901. (1963.) The subjunctive is used in an assumption or concession with **ut** or **nē**, or if the negation belongs to a single word, with ut nōn, nēmō, etc.: as, sed ut haec concēdantur, reliqua quī concēdī possunt? *but even supposing this be admitted, how can the rest be admitted?* nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est, *grant that suffering is not the chiefest evil, an evil it assuredly is* (716).

902. (1965.) The subjunctive with **ut** or **ut nōn** is used in clauses which serve to complete the sense of certain verbs and expressions, chiefly of bringing to pass, happening, and following.

Such are: faciō, efficiō (unless they imply purpose); fit, accidit, contingit, ēvenit; similarly mōs est, cōnsuētūdō est, reliquum est, relinquitur, accēdit, sequitur.

fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur, *they made their march look exactly like a stampede.* hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut minus lātē vagārentur, *so it came to pass that they did not rove round much.*

eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, *it came to pass on the same night that there was a full moon.* relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab āgmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, *the consequence was that Caesar could not allow any very distant excursion from the main line of march.*

903. (1966.) Verbs of happening may often be rendered best by compacter expressions: thus, **hīs rēbus fīēbat ut,** *consequently ;* **fit ut,** *once in a while, sometimes, often ;* **fierī potest ut,** *possibly;* **accidit ut,** *accidentally, unfortunately.*

904. (1968.) A subjunctive clause with **ut** is often used to define a preceding idea indicated in a general way by a neuter pronoun : as, **post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant,** *after his death the Helvetians attempted just the same to carry out their resolution of moving out of their abodes.*

<div align="center">PURE CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES</div>

905. (1970.) The subjunctive is used with **ut** or **ut nōn** to denote result.

mōns altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent, *an exceeding high mountain hung over, so that a very few could block the way.* **Ariovistus tantōs sibī spīritūs sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur,** *Ariovistus had put on such high and mighty airs as to seem intolerable.* **adeō angustō marī cōnflīxit, ut eius multitūdō nāvium explicārī nōn potuerit,** *he went into action in such cramped sea-room, that his armada could not deploy* (806).

<div align="center">quō</div>

906. (1972.) **quō,** *whereby, wherewith,* is the instrumental ablative from the relative and interrogative stem **qui-.** Combined with **minus,** *the less, not,* **quō** gives **quōminus.**

<div align="center">WITH THE INDICATIVE</div>

907. (1973.) The indicative is used with **quō** and a comparative in a comparative sentence, with **eō** or **hōc** and a comparative as correlative : as,

quō dēlīctum māius est, eō poena est tardior, *the greater the sin is, the slower is the punishment.* The **eō** or **hōc** is sometimes omitted : as, **quō plūrēs sumus, plūribus rēbus egēbimus,** *the more numerous we are, the more things we shall need.*

<div align="center">WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE</div>

908. (1974.) The subjunctive is used with **quō** to express purpose, chiefly when the clause of purpose contains a comparative expression : as,

N   193

medicō putō aliquid dandum esse, quō sit studiōsior, *I think it would be well to fee your medical man, to make him more attentive.* adiūtā mē quō id fīat facilius, *help me that it may be the easier done.* equitēs omnibus in locīs pūgnant, quō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent, *the troopers fought on every kind of ground, hoping to outshine the regular infantry thereby.*

quōminus

909. (1977.) The subjunctive with **quōminus** (906) is used to complete the sense of verbs of hindering or resisting.

Such verbs are: **impediō, dēterreō, obstō, resistō, repūgnō, nōn recūsō**; these verbs often have a subjunctive with **nē** (898).

nōn dēterret sapientem mors, quōminus rēi pūblicae suīsque cōnsulat, *death does not hinder the wise man from working for country and friends.* **quid obstat, quōminus sit beātus?** *what is to hinder his being happy?* **neque recūsāvit quōminus lēgis poenam subīret,** *and he did not decline to submit to the penalty of the law.*

quīn

910. (1980.) **quīn** is composed of **quī**, the ablative or locative of the interrogative and relative stem **qui-**, and **-ne**, *not.* It is used in simple sentences and as a conjunctive particle.

911. (1981.) For the use of **quīn**, *why not*, in questions with the indicative, see 706. Such questions have the sense of an affirmative command or exhortation: as, **quīn cōnscendimus equōs**, *why not mount*, or *to horse, to horse.*

912. (1985.) The subjunctive with **quīn** is used after **facere nōn possum** and **fierī nōn potest**: as, **facere nōn potuī quīn tibī sententiam dēclārārem,** *I could not help giving you my views.* **fierī nūllō modō poterat, quīn Cleomenī parcerētur,** *it was impossible not to spare Cleomenes.*

913. (1986.) The subjunctive with **quīn** is used in clauses which complete the sense of verbs of restraining, abstaining, delaying, or doubting, when such verbs have a negative, expressed or implied.

neque sibī hominēs barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat, quīn in prōvinciam exīrent, *and he thought, as they were savages, they would not*

194

restrain themselves, but would sally out into the province. nihil **praeter-**
mīsī, quīn Pompēium ā Caesaris coniūnctiōne āvocārem, *I left no stone*
unturned to prevent Pompey from joining Caesar. **nōn dubitat, quīn**
negēs, *he doesn't doubt that you'll refuse.* **neque abest suspīciō quīn ipse**
sibī mortem cōnscīverit, *and ground is not wanting for the belief that he*
made away with himself.

914. (1987.) **nōn dubitō** has other constructions: Accusative with the
infinitive (in some authors : chiefly Nepos and Livy and later writers).
Meaning *not hesitate,* the infinitive alone (955).

neque enim dubitābant hostem ventūrum, *for they firmly believed the*
enemy would come. **quid dubitāmus pultāre ?** *why do we hesitate to knock ?*

915. (1988.) The subjunctive with **quīn** is often used after
general negative assertions, or questions implying a nega-
tive : as,

nēmō fuit omnīnō mīlitum quīn vulnerārētur, *there was absolutely not*
a single soldier but was wounded. The main sentence often has **tam,**
ita, sīc, or **tantus:** as, **nēmō est tam fortis, quīn rēī novitāte perturbētur,**
there is nobody so brave but is demoralized by the strangeness of the situa-
tion.

---

dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū

916. (1993.) As a conjunctive particle, **dum,** *while,* means either *in*
the time while, or *all the time while;* in the latter sense **quoad** and
quamdiū are also used.   From *all the time while,* **dum** comes to mean *as*
long as, provided; and *until;* in this sense **quoad** and **dōnec** are also
used.

dum, *in the time while*

917. (1995.) The present indicative is regularly used
with **dum,** *in the time while.*

dum in hīs locīs Caesar morātur, ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt, *while Caesar*
tarried in these regions, some envoys came to him. **haec dum aguntur,**
intereā Cleomenēs iam ad Helōrī lītus pervēnerat, *while this was going*
on, Cleomenes meantime had already arrived at the shore of Helorum.

dum, quoad, quamdiū (dōnec), *all the time while*

918. (2000 f.) The indicative is used with **dum, quoad,** and
quamdiū, *all the time while, as long as.*

aegrōtō dum anima est, spēs esse dīcitur, *as long as a sick man has breath he is said to have hope.* quamdiū quisquam erit quī tē dēfendere audeat, vīvēs, *as long as there shall be a soul who will venture to defend you, you shall live on.* avus noster quoad vīxit, restitit M. Grātidiō, *our grandfather as long as he lived, opposed Gratidius.*

919. (2002.) In poetry and in late prose writers, **dōnec** is used in the sense of *all the time while,* usually with the indicative, but sometimes with the subjunctive of repeated past action (794): as,

dōnec armātī cōnfertīque abībant, peditum labor in persequendō fuit, *as long as they were moving off under arms and in close array, the task of pursuit fell to the infantry.* nihil trepidābant elephantī, dōnec continentī velut pōnte agerentur, *the elephants were not a bit skittish as long as they were driven along what seemed a continuous bridge.*

dum, *provided, so*

920. (2003.) The present and imperfect subjunctive are used in provisos introduced by **dum**, *provided, so.*

dum is sometimes accompanied by **modo**, *only;* or **modo** is used without **dum**. The negative is **nē.**

ōderint dum metuant, *let them hate, so they fear.* volet, cīvis modo haec sit, *he'll consent, only let her be a free-born maid.* māgnō mē metū līberābis, dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit, *you will relieve me of great fear, provided only there be a wall interposed between you and myself.*

dum, quoad, dōnec, *until*

921. (2005.) The present and imperfect subjunctive (710) are used in clauses introduced by **dum**, *until,* when the clause denotes something expected or proposed: as,

is dum veniat sedēns ibī opperībere, *you shall sit there waiting till he comes.* dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, in ancorīs exspectāvit, *he waited at anchor till the rest of the vessels should gather there.*

922. (2007.) **quoad** or **dōnec**, *until,* introduces a clause in the present subjunctive (710) when the main verb is present or future; and in the perfect indicative when the main verb is past.

ea continēbis, quoad ipse tē videam, *you will keep this back till I see*

196

you myself. **nostrī reppulērunt neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad equi-
tēs praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt,** *our people routed them and did not give
up the pursuit till the cavalry drove the enemy headlong.* The present
indicative of vivid narration (733) is found in Vergil and Livy: as,
**sociī cōnsurgere tōnsīs, dōnec rōstra tenent siccum et sēdēre carīnae
omnēs innocuae,** *with one accord the shipmates rose to oars, until the
beaks dry land attain, and keels all sat unscathed.*

---

quandō

923. (2010.) **quandō,** originally a temporal particle, has the meaning
when, which readily passes over to a causal meaning, *since, because.*   In
both meanings it introduces the indicative.

924. (2011). **quandō,** *when,* introduces a temporal clause
with the indicative : as,

quandō omnēs creātī sunt, tum ad eōs deus fātur, *when all were created,
then to them spake the god.*

925. (2013.) **quandō,** *since, seeing that,* introduces a causal
clause with the indicative: as,

quandō mē in hunc locum dēdūxit ōrātiō, docēbō, *seeing that my dis-
course has brought me to this point, I will show.*

---

sī

CONDITIONAL PERIODS

926. (2016.) A subordinate clause introduced by **sī,** *if,* or
nisi, *unless, if not,* states a condition, and is called a *Protasis ;*
the main clause states action occurring under that condition,
and is called an *Apodosis.*   The conditional protasis and apo-
dosis combined make a *Conditional Period* or *Sentence.*

Thus, **sī diēs est,** *if it is day,* is a conditional protasis; combined
with an apodosis, **lūcet,** *it is light,* it makes a conditional period: **sī
diēs est, lūcet,** *if it is day, it is light.*

927. (2018.) The apodosis is usually declarative.   Often, however, it
is interrogative, exclamatory, or imperative, or it may take any other
form which the thought or the context may require.

928. (2020.) The negative of **sī** is **sī nōn**, *if not*, or **nisi**, *unless*, *if not*, used especially of an exception or after a negative. A restriction, usually an ironical afterthought, may be introduced by **nisi fōrte** or **nisi vērō** with the indicative.

929. (2021.) When a second conditional period is opposed to a first, it is usually introduced by **sīn** (or **sīn autem**).

CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL PROTASES

930. (2022.) Conditional protases may be divided into two classes:

931. (2023.) I. INDETERMINATE protases, that is, such as merely suppose an action, without implying either its occurrence or its non-occurrence ; these may take :

(A.) Any tense of the indicative required by the sense (933): or (B.) the present subjunctive, less frequently the perfect subjunctive, to express a condition in the future (936).

932. (2024.) II. Protases of ACTION NON-OCCURRENT, that is, such as suppose action not taking place. These take the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

Thus, in the period **sī diēs est, lūcet**, *if it is day, it is light*, the protasis *if it is day* is indeterminate, neither implying that *it is*, or *is not day*. But in **sī vīveret, verba ēius audīrētis**, *if he were alive, you would hear his evidence*, the protasis denotes action non-occurrent, *if he were alive*, implying *but he is not*.

I. INDETERMINATE PROTASES

(A.) INDICATIVE USE

933. (2025.) The indicative in a conditional protasis may state present, past, or future time. The mood and tense of the apodosis are determined by the sense (927).

sī sunt dī, beneficī in hominēs sunt, *if there are gods, they are kind to men*. **sī cui vēnae sīc moventur, is habet febrim**, *if a man's pulse beats thus and so, he always has fever*. **sī peccāvī, īnsciēns fēcī**, *if I've done wrong, it was in ignorance*. **hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant**, *whenever there was any pretty sharp work, these men would always fall to*.

stomachābātur senex, sī quid asperius dīxeram, *the old gentleman was always nettled, if I said anything harsh.* sī id audēbis dīcere, causam inimīcī tuī sublevābis, *if you venture to say that, you will promote the cause of your enemy.* dēsilīte, mīlitēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prō-dere, *jump overboard, men, unless you choose to abandon your eagle to the enemy.* quod sī nōn possumus facere, moriāmur, *if we cannot do it, let us die* (714).

THE SUBJUNCTIVE FOR THE INDICATIVE

934. (2070.) The indefinite second person singular of the present or perfect subjunctive is often used in general suppositions (794): as,

nec habēre virtūtem satis est nisi ūtāre, *and to have virtue is not enough, unless one use it.*

935. (2070.) The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is sometimes used in general past suppositions (794): as,

sī quis prehenderētur, cōnsēnsū mīlitum ēripiēbātur, *every time a man was taken up, he was rescued by the joint action of the rank and file.* But the indicative is the regular classical construction (933).

(B.) SUBJUNCTIVE USE

936. (2072 f.) The present or perfect subjunctive may be used in a conditional protasis of future time. The apodosis is usually in the present subjunctive (717).

hanc viam sī asperam esse negem, mentiar, *if I should say that this path is not rough, I should not tell the truth.* haec sī tēcum patria lo-quātur, nōnne impetrāre dēbeat ? *if thy country should plead with thee thus, ought she not to carry her point ?* sī ā corōnā relictus sim, nōn queam dīcere, *if I should ever be abandoned by my audience, I should not be able to speak.*

937. (2074.) The indicative is sometimes used in the apo-dosis, especially in expressions of ability, duty, etc. (693): as,

intrāre, sī possim, castra hostium volō, *I propose to enter the camp of the enemy, if I be able.* tē neque dēbent adiuvāre, sī possint, neque pos-sunt, sī velint, *they ought not to help you, if they could, and cannot, if they would.* neque tū hōc dīcere audēbis, nec sī cupiās, licēbit, *you will not dare to say this, sir, nor if you wish, will you be allowed.*

II. PROTASES OF ACTION NON–OCCURRENT

938. (2091.) The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis of a conditional period in which the non-occurrence of the action is implied (932).   The imperfect usually denotes present time, and the pluperfect denotes past time.

is iam prīdem est mortuus. sī vīveret, verba ēius audīrētis, *that person has long been dead; if he were alive, you would hear his evidence.* invēnissēmus iam diū, sī vīveret, *were he alive, we should have found him long ago.* sī vēnissēs ad exercitum, ā tribūnīs vīsus essēs, *if you had come to the army, you would have been seen by the tribunes.* sī nōn mēcum aetātem ēgisset, hodiē stulta vīveret, *if she hadn't spent her life with me, she'd be a fool to-day.*

939. (2092.) The imperfect sometimes denotes past time (720): as,

num igitur eum, sī tum essēs, temerārium cīvem putārēs? *would you therefore have thought him, if you had lived then, a hotheaded citizen?* ōlim sī advēnissem, magis tū tum istūc dīcerēs, *if I had come before, you'd have said so then all the more.*

INDICATIVE APODOSIS

940. (2101.) The apodosis of verbs of ability, duty, etc. (693), including the gerundive with **sum**, usually takes the indicative, the imperfect taking the place of the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, and the perfect that of the pluperfect subjunctive: as,

quem patris locō, sī ūlla in tē pietās esset, colere dēbēbās, *whom you ought to honor as a father, if you had any such thing as affection in you.* quid enim poterat Hēius respondēre, sī esset improbus? *for what answer could Hejus have given, if he were an unprincipled man?* sī eum captivitās in urbem pertrāxisset, Caesarem ipsum audīre potuit, *if captivity had carried him to the city, he could have heard Caesar himself.* quod sī Rōmae Cn. Pompēius prīvātus esset, tamen ad tantum bellum is erat mittendus, *now if Pompey were at Rome, in private station, still he would be the man to send to this important war.*

941. (2093.) The periphrastic future is sometimes used in the apodosis, commonly in the indicative mood : as, **quibus, sī Rōmae esset, facile contentus futūrus erat,** *with which, if he were in Rome, he would readily be satisfied.*

VARIATION OF THE PROTASIS

942. (2109 f.) Instead of a conditional protasis with **sī** or **nisi**, equivalents are often used. Thus, the protasis may be coordinated (777), or be introduced by a relative pronoun (831), **cum** (854), **ubĭ** (885), **ut** or **nē** (901), **dum, dum modo, modo** (920). Or the protasis may be intimated by **sine,** *without,* by a participle or ablative absolute, or otherwise : as,

nēmō umquam sine māgnā spē immortālitātis sē prō patriā offerret ad mortem, *nobody would ever expose himself to death for his country without a well-grounded conviction of immortality.* **Sūlla, crēdō, hunc petentem repudiāsset,** *Sulla, I suppose, would have turned my client away, if he petitioned him.* **vīvere ego Britannicō potiente rērum poteram ?** *as for me, could I live, if Britannicus were on the throne ?*

CONCESSIVE PROTASES

943. (2116.) **etsī, tametsī,** and **etiamsī,** when they mean *although,* are used to introduce concessive protases in the indicative : as,

Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, *though the winter always sets in early in these parts, nevertheless Caesar made haste to proceed to Britain.* **etiamsī multī mēcum contendent, tamen omnīs superābō,** *though I shall have many rivals, yet I will outdo them all.*

CONDITIONAL COMPARISONS
quasi, tamquam sī, ut or velut sī

944. (2117 f.) **sī** following a word meaning *than* or *as* is used with the subjunctive in conditional comparisons. **sī** is often omitted after **tamquam,** and sometimes after **velut.**

945. (2119.) The tense of the subjunctive is usually regulated by the sequence of tenses : as,

quid ego hīs testibus ūtor, quasi rēs dubia sit ? *why do I employ these*

witnesses, as if it were a case involving doubt ? **tamquam extrūderētur, ita cucurrit,** *he rushed away as if he had been kicked out.* **quod absentis Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent,** *because they trembled at Ariovistus's barbarity, absent as he was, just as if he stood before their eyes.*

NOUNS OF THE VERB

The Infinitive

946. (2160.) The infinitive is in its origin a verbal substantive.

947. (2161.) The present infinitive active is an ancient dative, closely resembling in meaning and use the English infinitive with *to*. It originally marked action merely in a general way, without indication of voice or tense.   In virtue of this original timeless character, the present often represents action which is really past or future ; in such cases the time must be inferred from the context.

948. (2162.) The present infinitive active gradually approached the character of a verb, and the original substantive nature being forgotten, it was supplemented by a passive, and by forms for completed and for future action, active and passive.

949. (2163.) The infinitive has furthermore two other properties of the verb : (*a.*) it is modified by an adverb, not by an adjective ; and (*b.*) it is followed by the construction of its verb.

POETICAL USE OF THE INFINITIVE

THE INFINITIVE OF PURPOSE

950. (2164.) The infinitive denotes purpose with verbs of motion, **eō, veniō, currō, mittō,** in poetical Latin : as,

nec dulcēs occurrent ōscula nātī praeripere, *nor shall thy children dear come running kiss on kiss to snatch.* **nōn nōs ferrō Libycōs populāre penātīs vēnimus,** *we are not come with steel to harry Libya's hearths.*

951. (2165.) In poetry, the infinitive of purpose is used with synonymes of **dō** also, and with verbs of leaving, taking away, taking up, etc.

huic lōrīcam dōnat habēre, *on him a corselet he bestows to wear.* **trīstitiam et metūs trādam protervīs in mare Crēticum portāre ventīs,** *sadness and fears I'll to the wanton winds consign, to sweep into the Cretic sea.*

The Infinitive with Adjectives

952. (2166.) The infinitive is sometimes used with adjectives, chiefly by poets of the Augustan age, and late prose writers: as,

avidī committere pūgnam, *hot to engage in fight.* **sōlī cantāre perītī Arcades,** *Arcadians alone in minstrelsy are skilled.* **vitulus niveus vidērī,** *a bullock snow-white to behold.*

The Ordinary Use of the Infinitive

953. (2167.) The infinitive is ordinarily used either as object or as subject of a verb.

The Infinitive as Object

The Complementary Infinitive

954. (2168.) The present infinitive is often used to complete the meaning of certain kinds of verbs which imply another action of the same subject: as,

scīre volēbat, *he wanted to know.* **hōc facere dēbēs,** *you ought to do this.* **Caesar Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat,** *Caesar had resolved to cross the Rhine.* **mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī,** *he makes haste to leave Rome.* **Dīviciācus Caesarem obsecrāre coepit,** *Diviciacus began to entreat Caesar.*

955. (2169.) The verbs or verbal expressions which are supplemented by an infinitive are chiefly such as mean *can, will* or *wish, ought, resolve, endeavor, dare, fear, hesitate, hasten, begin, continue, cease, neglect, am wont, learn, know how, remember, forget, seem.*

Some of the commonest of these verbs are **possum ; volō, nōlō, mālō, cupiō, studeō ; dēbeō ; cōgitō, meditor, statuō, cōnstituō, dēcernō, parō ; cōnor, nītor, contendō ; audeō ; vereor ; dubitō, festīnō, mātūrō, īnstituō, coepī, incipiō, pergō, dēsinō, dēsistō, neglegō, nōn cūrō ; soleō, adsuēscō, cōnsuēscō ; discō, sciō, nesciō, meminī, videor.**

956. (2170.) The infinitive is also used with many verbal expressions equivalent to the above verbs, such as **habeō in animō, cōnsilium est, certum est, parātus sum,** etc., etc., or with **parātus** alone, **adsuēfactus,** etc., etc.

957. (2171.) A predicate noun used with the complementary infinitive, is put in the nominative: as,

Aelius Stōicus esse voluit, *Aelius wanted to be a Stoic.* **esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat,** *he chose to be good rather than seem good.*

THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE

958. (2172.) A very common form of a dependent sentence is that known as the *Accusative with the Infinitive.*

Thus, of the two coordinate sentences **sciō : iocāris tū nunc,** *I know : you are jesting now,* the second may be put in a dependent form, the two sentences blending into one : **sciō iocārī tē nunc,** *I know you to be jesting now.*

959. (2173.) The subject of an infinitive is put in the accusative.

Thus, in **eum vident,** *they see him,* **eum** is the object of **vident** (499). If **sedēre** is added, **eum vident sedēre,** *they see him sit,* or *they see that he is sitting,* **eum** is at the same time the object of **vident** and the subject of **sedēre.** But the accusative by degrees becoming detached from the main verb, and closely interlocked with the infinitive, the combination is extended to cases where the main verb is intransitive or passive.

960. (2174.) A predicate noun referring to a subject accusative is itself put in the accusative : as,

tē esse arbitror puerum probum, *I think you are a good boy.* **nēminem vīvum capī patiuntur,** *they do not allow anybody to be made prisoner alive.*

VERBS OF PERCEIVING, KNOWING, THINKING, AND SAYING

961. (2175.) The accusative with the infinitive is used with active verbs or verbal expressions of perceiving, knowing, thinking, and saying : as,

patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs? *you don't feel that your plots are all out?* **huic fīlium scīs esse?** *you are aware that this man has a son?* **Pompēiōs cōnsēdisse terrae mōtū audīvimus,** *we have heard that Pompei has been swallowed up by an earthquake.* **dīcit mōntem ab hostibus tenērī,** *he says the hill is held by the enemy.*

Some of the commonest of these verbs are : (*a.*) **audiō, sentiō, videō.** (*b.*) **accipiō, intellegō, sciō, nesciō.** (*c.*) **cēnseō, cōgitō, crēdō, exīstimō, putō.** (*d.*) **adfirmō, dīcō, doceō, fateor, nārrō, negō, nūntiō, ostendō, prōmittō, scrībō, spērō, trādō.** (*e.*) **rūmor est, nōn mē fugit, certus sum, nōn nescius sum,** etc., etc.

962. (2177.) Passive verbs of this class are commonly used personally

in the third person of the present system, with the subject, and the predicate noun, if used, in the nominative : as,

hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, *these people are said to have a hundred cantons.*   pōns prope effectus nūntiābātur, *the bridge was reported to be well-nigh done.*   With videor, *seem,* the personal construction is the rule in all three persons, and in the perfect system as well as the present.

963. (2180.) In the perfect system, and also usually in the gerundive construction, verbs of this class are commonly impersonal : as,

trāditum est Homērum caecum fuisse, *the tradition is that Homer was blind.*   ubī tyrannus est, ibī dīcendum est nūllam esse rem pūblicam, *wherever there is an absolute ruler, there we must maintain there is no commonwealth.*

VERBS OF EMOTION

964. (2187.) The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes used with verbs of joy, grief, surprise, or wonder : as,

venīre tū mē gaudēs, *thou art glad I'm come.*   doluī pācem repudiārī, *I felt sorry peace was rejected.*   These verbs often have the construction with quod (850).

VERBS OF DESIRE

965. (2189.) The accusative with the infinitive is commonly used with volō (mālō, nōlō), and cupiō, when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the verb : as,

Catilīnam perīre voluī, *I wished Catiline to die.*   tē tuā fruī virtūte cupimus, *we wish you to reap the benefit of your high character.*

966. (2190.) Even when the subjects denote the same person, the accusative is sometimes used with the infinitive : as,

morī mē mālim, *I'd rather die.*   Oftenest when the infinitive is esse, vidērī, putārī, or dīcī : as, cupiō mē esse clēmentem, cupiō mē nōn dissolūtum vidērī, *I wish to play the man of mercy, and yet I do not wish to seem over lax.*

967. (2192.) volō, mālō, and cupiō are often coordinated with the subjunctive of desire (780).   volō and mālō often have the subjunctive with ut (894).

VERBS OF BIDDING AND FORBIDDING AND OF ALLOWING

968. (2198.) The accusative with the infinitive is used with iubeō and vetō, sinō and patior : as,

205

mīlitēs ex oppidō exīre iūssit, *he ordered the soldiers to go out of the town.* pōntem iubet rescindī, *he orders the bridge torn up.* castra vāllō mūnīrī vetuit, *he gave orders that the camp should not be fortified with a palisade.* vīnum ad sē inportārī nōn sinunt, *wine they will not allow to be brought into their country.*

969. (2199.) The person ordered or forbidden is often omitted, when stress is laid on the action merely, or when the person is obvious from the context : as, castra mūnīre iubet, i. e. mīlitēs, *he gives orders to construct a camp.*

970. (2201.) In the passive, iubeō, vetō, and sinō are used personally, the accusative of the person ordered or forbidden becoming nominative : as, iubentur scrībere exercitum, *they are ordered to raise an army.*

THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

971. (2207.) The accusative with the infinitive, or the infinitive alone, present or perfect, may be used as the subject of a verb, in apposition with the subject, or as a predicate nominative : as,

mendācem memorem esse oportēre, *that a liar ought to have a good memory.* sequitur illud, caedem senātum iūdicāsse contrā rem pūblicam esse factam, *next comes this point, that the senate adjudged the homicide an offence against the state.* exitus fuit ōrātiōnis, sibī nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, *the end of the speech was that he could not have any friendship with these people.*

972. (2208 ff.) The infinitive is used as the subject with impersonal verbs, with est, putātur, habētur, etc., and an abstract substantive, a genitive, or a neuter adjective in the predicate.

Some of the commonest impersonal verbs are appāret, decet, expedit, licet, lubet, oportet, praestat, pudet, condūcit, cōnstat, interest, iuvat, placet. Some of the commonest abstracts used thus with est are fāma, fās and nefās, opus, mōs, tempus. For genitives, see 557. Neuter adjectives are such as aequum, inīquum, incrēdibile, manifestum, necesse, rēctum, etc., etc.

973. (2212.) The accusative is not expressed when it is indefinite, *you, a man, a person, anybody,* frequently also when it is implied in

some other case in the sentence: as, **nōn tam praeclārum est scīre Latīnē quam turpe nescīre**, *it is not so creditable to be a Latin scholar as it is disreputable not to be.*

974. (2213.) A predicate noun referring to the unexpressed indefinite subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative: as, **contentum suīs rēbus esse māximae sunt dīvitiae**, *to be satisfied with what one has is the greatest possible wealth.*

975. (2214.) When the subject of the infinitive is implied in a dative, a predicate noun may also be in the dative: as, **mihī neglegentī esse nōn licet**, *it will not do for me to be careless.*

THE INFINITIVE OF EXCLAMATION

976. (2216.) The infinitive alone, or the accusative with the infinitive, is sometimes used in exclamations of surprise, incredulity, disapproval, or lamentation: as,

at tē Rōmae nōn fore, *only to think you won't be in Rome!* **hōc posterīs memoriae trāditum īrī**, *to think this will be passed down to generations yet unborn!* Often with a -ne: as, **tēne hōc, Accī, dīcere, tālī prūdentiā praeditum**, *what? you to say this, Accius, with your sound sense!*

THE INFINITIVE OF INTIMATION

977. (2217.) This infinitive has already been spoken of; see 708.

THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE

978. (2218.) The present infinitive represents action as going on, the perfect as completed, and the future as not yet begun, at the time of the action of the verb to which the infinitive is attached.

THE PRESENT TENSE

979. (2219.) In itself, the present infinitive denotes action merely as going on, without any reference to time. With some verbs, however, which look to the future, the present relates to action in the immediate future. With verbs of

perceiving, knowing, thinking, and saying, it denotes action as going on at the time of the verb : as,

facinus est vincīre cīvem Rōmānum, *it is a crime to put a Roman in irons.* audīre cupiō, *I am eager to hear.* errāre eōs dīcunt, *they say those people are mistaken.* tempus dīxī esse, *I said it was time.* dīcēs tibǐ Siculōs esse amīcōs ? *will you say the Sicilians are friends of yours ?*

980. (2222.) The present infinitive dependent on a past tense of dēbeō, oportet, possum, often requires the English perfect infinitive in translation : as, quid enim facere poterāmus ? *for what else could we have done ?* See, however, 693.

THE PERFECT TENSE

981. (2223.) The perfect active infinitive sometimes serves as a complement of dēbeō, volō, possum, etc. (954) : as,

unde illa potuit didicisse ? *from what source could he have all that information acquired?* bellum quod possumus ante hiemem perfēcisse, *the war which we can have ended up before winter.*

982. (2226.) Any past tense of the indicative, when made dependent on a verb of perceiving, knowing, thinking, or saying, is represented by the perfect infinitive.

Thus, in Theophrastus scrībit Cīmōnem hospitālem fuisse : ita enim vīlicīs imperāvisse, ut omnia praebērentur, *Theophrastus says in his book that Cimon was the soul of hospitality: he had directed his stewards to furnish everything required;* the fuisse represents erat or fuit, and the imperāvisse may represent imperābat, imperāvit, or perhaps imperāverat, of direct discourse.

THE FUTURE TENSE

983. (2232.) The future infinitive is only used as a representative of the indicative, and not as a substantive.

984. (2233.) For the future infinitive active or passive, a circumlocution with fore or futūrum esse with ut and the subjunctive present or imperfect is often used. This construction is necessary when the verb has no future participle or supine : as,

spērō fore ut contingat id nōbīs, *I hope we may be so fortunate.* clāmābant fore ut ipsī sē dī ulcīscerentur, *they cried out that the gods would avenge themselves.*

985. (2234.) **fore** with the perfect participle of a passive or deponent, represents the future perfect of direct discourse: as, **dēbellātum mox fore rēbantur,** *they thought the war would soon be over.*

986. (2235.) The future infinitive is commonly used with **iūrō, minor, polliceor, prōmittō,** and **spērō,** especially when the leading verb and the infinitive have the same subject: as,

   iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum, *he swore he would not come back to camp except as a victor.* **obsidēs datūrōs polliciti sunt,** *they volunteered to give hostages.*

The Gerundive and Gerund

987. (2237 ff.) The gerundive is a verbal adjective (391). The gerund is a neuter verbal substantive, used only in the oblique cases of the singular. Both gerundives and gerunds express, in a noun form, the uncompleted action of the verb. They are modified, like verbs, by adverbs, not by adjectives.

THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION

988. (2240.) The gerundive expresses, in an adjective form, the uncompleted action of a verb of transitive use exerted on a substantive object, the substantive standing in the case required by the context, and the gerundive agreeing with it.

   In this construction, which is called the *gerundive construction,* the substantive and gerundive blend together in sense like the parts of a compound.

   studium agri colendi, *the occupation of land-tilling.* **vir regendae rēi pūblicae scientissimus,** *a man of great experience in state-managing.*

THE GERUND

989. (2241.) The gerund expresses, in a substantive form, the uncompleted action of a verb which has no direct object.

   ars vīvendī, *the art of living.* **sē experiendō didicisse,** *he had learned by experience.*

990. (2242.) Gerunds of verbs of transitive use are exceptionally found with a substantive object (999, 1001), and regularly with neuter pronouns and neuter plural adjectives to avoid ambiguity.

agendī aliquid discendīque causā, *for the sake of doing or learning something.*   **regendī cūncta onus,** *the burden of governing the world.*

CASES OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES

NOMINATIVE

991. (2243.) The nominative of the gerundive construction, as the subject of **sum,** denotes action which is to be done.

The combination acquires the meaning of obligation or propriety, and this meaning also passes over to the accusative with **esse.** The person who has the action to do is put in the dative of the possessor (544). Instead of the dative, the ablative with **ab** is sometimes used (684), particularly where the dative would be ambiguous.

tibĭ haec cūra suscipienda est, *the undertaking of this care exists for you,* i. e. *you must undertake this charge.*   **Caesar statuit sibĭ Rhēnum esse trānseundum,** *Caesar made up his mind that he must cross the Rhine.*   **ĕĭ ego ā mē referendam grātiam nōn putem?** *should I not think that I ought to show my gratitude to him?*

992. (2246.) Verbs of intransitive use take the impersonal construction: as,

nōbīs ācriter pūgnandum est, *we must fight vigorously.*   **nēmō umquam sapiēns prōditōrī crēdendum putāvit,** *no wise man ever held that a traitor was to be trusted.*

993. (2248.) The gerundive sometimes acquires, in itself, the meaning of obligation or propriety, which it properly has only when combined with **sum,** and becomes a mere adjective, used in any case.

huic timendō hostī obvius fuī, *I met this dreadful foe.*   **Athēnās, multa vīsenda habentīs,** *Athens, which contains many sights worth a visit.*

ACCUSATIVE

994. (2250.) The accusative of the gerundive construction is used with **cūrō**, and with verbs of giving or assigning, such as **dō, trādō, relinquō, permittō.**

    pōntem faciendum cūrat, *he attends to a bridge's being made,* i. e. *has it made.* **agrōs plēbī colendōs dedit,** *he gave lands to the common people to till.* **Antigonus Eumenem propīnquīs sepeliendum trādidit,** *Antigonus delivered Eumenes to his kinsfolk to be buried.*

995. (2252.) The accusative of the gerundive construction or gerund is used with a preposition, usually **ad.**

    ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur, *Orgetorix is chosen to do this.* **palūs Rōmānōs ad īnsequendum tardābat,** *a morass hindered the Romans from pursuit.* **ūtēbātur eō cibō quī esset facillimus ad concoquendum,** *he made use of the sort of food which was easiest to digest.*

DATIVE

996. (2254.) The dative of the gerundive construction is used rarely with a few verbs and adjectives, and in some set phrases: as,

    hībernīs oppūgnandīs hunc esse dictum diem, *that this was the day set for attacking the winter quarters.* **Dēmosthenēs cūrātor mūrīs reficiendīs fuit,** *Demosthenes was commissioner for repairing the walls.*

997. (2257.) The dative of the gerund is confined in the best prose to a few special phrases: as, **quod scrībendō adfuistī,** *because you were present at the writing.*

GENITIVE

998. (2258.) The genitive of the gerundive construction or gerund is used with substantives or adjectives.

    summa difficultās nāvigandī, *the greatest difficulty in sailing.* **proeliī committendī sīgnum dedit,** *he gave the signal for beginning the battle.* **studiōsus audiendī,** *an eager listener.* Particularly with **causā** (570), to denote purpose: as, **vītandae suspīciōnis causā,** *to avoid suspicion.*

999. (2259.) In the genitive, a transitive gerund with an object in the accusative sometimes occurs: as, **cupidus tē audiendī,** *eager to hear you.* But commonly the gerundive construction is used.

    1000. (2260.) **nostrī, vestrī,** and **suī,** being singular in form have

often a singular gerundive : as, **vēnisse tempus ulcīscendī suī,** *that the time was come for them to revenge themselves.*

ABLATIVE

1001. (2265.) In the ablative a transitive gerund with a substantive object is not uncommon : as, **largē partiendō praedam,** *by a lavish distribution of the spoil.*

1002. (2266.) The ablative of the gerundive construction or gerund denotes means, less often cause.

opprimī sustentandō ac prōlātandō nūllō pactō potest, *it cannot be crushed by patience and procrastination.* **flendō turgidulī rubent ocellī,** *with weeping red and swollen are her eyne.*

1003. (2267.) The ablative of the gerundive construction or gerund is also accompanied by a preposition, **ab, dē, in,** or **ex.**

nūllum tempus illī umquam vacābat aut ā scrībendō aut ā cōgitandō, *he never had any time free from writing or from thinking.* **nihil dē causā discendā praecipiunt,** *they give no instruction about studying up a case.*

The Supine

1004. (2269.) The supine is a verbal substantive. The form in **-um** is an accusative. The form in **-ū** is used sometimes as a dative, sometimes as an ablative.

THE SUPINE IN -um

1005. (2270.) The supine in **-um** denotes purpose with verbs of motion : as,

abiit piscātum, *he's gone a fishing.* **legiōne ūnā frūmentātum missā,** *one legion being sent a foraging.* In classical Latin, purpose is more commonly expressed by the subjunctive with **ut** or a relative pronoun, or by a gerundive or gerund with **ad** or **causā.**

1006. (2272.) The supine in **-um** may be followed by the same construction as its verb : as, **lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium,** *they send envoys to Caesar to beg aid.* **nōn ego Grāis servītum mātribus ībō,** *not I shall go to be the serf of Grecian dames.*

THE SUPINE IN -ū

1007. (2274.) The supine in **-ū** is used with **fās, nefās,** and

adjectives, chiefly of such meaning as *easy, good, pleasant, strange,* or their opposites: as,

sī hōc fās est dictū, *if heaven allows us to say so.* quaerunt quod optimum factū sit, *they ask what the best thing is to do.*

1008. (2275.) The supine in -ū is never used with an object in the accusative.

The Participle

1009. (2278.) The participle is a verbal adjective. Like the adjective, it is inflected to agree with its substantive. Like the verb, it may be modified by an adverb, it is active or passive, and it expresses action as continuing, completed, or future. It may also be followed by the same case as its verb.

TIME OF THE PARTICIPLE

1010. (2279.) The time to which the participle refers is indicated by the verb of the sentence: as,

āēr effluēns hūc et illūc ventōs efficit, *the air by streaming to and fro produces winds.* manūs tendentēs vītam ōrābant, *with hands outstretched they begged their lives.* cōnsecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat, receptuī canī iūssit, *having accomplished what he had designed, he gave orders to sound the retreat.*

1011. (2280.) The perfect participle of some deponents is sometimes used with past tenses or their equivalents to denote incomplete contemporaneous action: as,

gāvīsus illōs retinērī iūssit, *with pleasure he gave orders for their detention.* persuādent Rauracīs utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō proficīscantur, *they coaxed the Rauraci to adopt the same plan and go.*

THE ATTRIBUTIVE PARTICIPLE

1012. (2282.) The present or perfect participle is often used as an adjective to express a permanent condition: as,

ācrem ōrātōrem, incēnsum et agentem et canōrum forī strepitus dēsīderat, *the noisy forum requires an impetuous speaker, inspired and dramatic and sonorous.*

1013. (2285.) A perfect participle in agreement with a substantive often contains the leading idea, and may be translated like an abstract substantive with a genitive dependent. The nominative is rarely thus used.

213

iniūriae retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, *the outrages of Roman knights detained,* i. e. *in the detention of Roman knights.* post nātōs hominēs, *since the creation of man.* ante cīvitātem datam, *before the gift of the citizenship.*

The Substantive Participle

1014. (2287.) Participles sometimes become substantives, especially the perfect participle : as,

vīvit gnāta, *your daughter's alive.* ēvocātīs equōs sūmit, *he took away the veterans' horses* Adverbs, not adjectives, are commonly used to qualify perfect participles used as substantives.

The Appositive Participle

1015. (2293.) The appositive participle is a loose substitute for a subordinate sentence introduced by a relative or by a conjunctive particle.

1016. (2294.) The appositive participle may represent a relative sentence : as, nōvī ego Epicūrēōs omnia sigilla venerantēs, *I know Epicureans who bow the knee to all sorts of graven images.*

1017. (2295.) The appositive participle, representing other sentences, may express various relations : as, (*a.*) time, (*b.*) cause or means, (*c.*) purpose, (*d.*) concession, (*e.*) condition, (*f.*) manner.

For the ablative absolute in such relations, see 640.

(*a.*) Time : occīsus est ā cēnā rediēns, *he was murdered on his way home from a dinner-party.*

(*b.*) Cause or means : mōtum exspectāns dīlectum habēre īnstituit, *since he anticipated a rising, he determined on recruiting troops.* moveor tālī amīcō orbātus, *I am certainly affected at being bereaved of such a friend.*

(*c.*) Purpose : in poetry and late prose, the future participle : laetō complērant lītora coetū vīsūrī Aeneadas, *in happy company they'd filled the strand to see Aeneas' men.*

(*d.*) Concession : ibī vehementissimē perturbātus Lentulus tamen et sīgnum et manum suam cōgnōvit, *thereupon Lentulus, though thrown into the most extreme confusion, did yet recognize his own hand and seal.*

(*e.*) Condition : quid igitur mihī ferārum laniātus oberit nihil sentientī? *what hurt will the clawing of wild beasts do me if I have no feeling?*

(*f.*) Manner : dictātor et magister equitum triumphantēs in urbem

rediēre, *the dictator and his master of the horse returned to the city in triumph.*

THE PREDICATIVE PARTICIPLE

1018. (2297.) **habeō** is sometimes used with certain perfect participles to express an action continuing in its consequences: as,

in eā prōvinciā pecūniās māgnās collocātās habent, *they have invested large funds in that province.* clausum lacū ac mōntibus et circumfūsum suīs cōpiīs habuit hostem, *his enemy he had shut in by lake and mountains and surrounded by his troops.*

1019. (2298.) The present participle is used predicatively with verbs signifying *represent*, and with verbs denoting the exercise of the senses or mind: as,

facit Sōcratem disputantem, *he represents Socrates discussing.* nōn illum miserum, īgnārum cāsūs suī, redeuntem ā cēnā vidētis? *do you not see the poor man, little dreaming of his fate, returning from the dinner?* nōn audīvit dracōnem loquentem, *he did not hear the serpent speaking.* Verbs denoting the exercise of the senses or mind take the accusative with the infinitive to denote the fact or action; see 961.

Appendix

Indirect Discourse

(Ōrātiō Oblīqua)

1020. (2309.) The speech or thought of another, when made dependent on a verb of saying or thinking, is called *Indirect Discourse* (789).

1021. (2310.) The verb of thinking or saying is often not distinctly expressed, but only implied in the context (791).

1022. (2311.) The principles which govern the change of direct discourse into indirect discourse have been already set forth in the foregoing pages; but, for the convenience of the learner, they are here put together.

MOOD

(A.) Main Sentences

1023. (2312.) Declarative sentences of direct discourse are put in the accusative with the infinitive, and interrogative and imperative sentences of direct discourse are put in the subjunctive, in indirect discourse: as,

dīcit mōntem ab hostibus tenērī, *he says that the hill is held by the enemy* (961). quid vellet? cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? *what did he mean? why this movement into his property?* (810). Cicerō respondit: sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant, *Cicero replied: if they wished to lay down their arms, let them take his advice and send envoys to Caesar* (713).

1024. (2313.) Rhetorical questions (that is, declarations made for

216

effect in the form of questions) in the first or third person in the direct discourse are put in the accusative with the infinitive in indirect discourse: as,

sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere posse? *if he were inclined to disregard the old affront, could he also forget their fresh insults?*

1025. (2314.) Questions which are in the subjunctive in direct discourse retain the subjunctive in indirect discourse: as, **quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripī quis patī posset?** *who could allow them to be stripped of what they had possessed when they became the friends of the Roman nation?* (723).

(B.) SUBORDINATE SENTENCES

1026. (2315.) The verb of a subordinate sentence, introduced by a relative word or a conjunctive particle, stands in the subjunctive in indirect discourse (788).

ad haec Ariovistus respondit: iūs esse bellī, ut quī vīcissent iīs quōs vīcissent, quemadmodum vellent imperārent, *to this Ariovistus answered: that it was the right of war for the conquerors to dictate to the conquered such terms as they pleased.*

1027. (2316.) But relative sentences equivalent to main sentences (843) may be put in the accusative with the infinitive: as, **ūnum medium diem fuisse, quem tōtum Galbam in cōnsiderandā causā compōnendāque posuisse,** *that a single day intervened and that this whole day Galba employed in studying up and arranging the case.*

1028. (2318.) Relative sentences which are not a part of the quotation, but an addition of the writer's, or which are circumlocutions equivalent to a substantive, are often marked by the indicative: as,

nūntiātum est Ariovistum ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, *it was reported that Ariovistus was pressing on to seize Vesontio, which is the most considerable town of the Sequans.*

1029. (2319.) Sentences containing the thought of another, introduced by a relative pronoun or by causal, temporal, or other conjunctive particles, often take the subjunctive, though not appended to the accusative with the infinitive (791): as,

numquis, quod bonus vir esset, grātiās dīs ēgit umquam? *did anybody ever thank the gods " because he was a good man"?* (851). For other examples, see 791.

TENSE

(A.) OF THE INFINITIVE

1030. (2321.) The tenses of the infinitive follow their usual law (978), representing the action as present, past, or future, from the speaker's point of view.

nūntiātum est Ariovistum ad occupandum Vesontiōnem contendere trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōfēcisse, *it was reported that Ariovistus was pressing on* (979) *to seize Vesontio, and that he had done a three days' journey from his own borders* (982). **lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt,** *the envoys said they would report this to their countrymen* (983). For other examples, see 961–970; for the infinitive equivalent of the indicative imperfect and pluperfect, see 982.

(B.) OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

1031. (2322.) The tenses of the subjunctive follow the law of the sequence of tenses; see 802.

The tenses are usually imperfect or pluperfect, as the verb introducing a quotation is usually past.

Sōcratēs dīcere solēbat, omnēs in eō quod scīrent, satis esse ēloquentēs, *Socrates used to maintain that all men were eloquent enough in a matter which they understood* (808). **cognōvit Suēbōs posteā quam pontem fierī comperissent, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse,** *he ascertained that after the Suebans had learned of the building of the bridge, they had sent out messengers in every direction.* For other examples, see 803–809.

1032. (2323.) But the present and perfect subjunctive are often used, especially when the main verb is present, or for vividness even when the main verb is secondary.

Alexandrum Philippus accūsat quod largītiōne benevolentiam Macedonum cōnsectētur, *Philip accuses Alexander of courting the favor of the Macedonians by the use of money* (803, 851). **Ariovistus respondit: stīpendium capere iūre bellī quod victōrēs victīs imponere cōnsuerint,** *Ariovistus answered that it was by the laws of war that he took the tribute which victors were wont to lay upon the vanquished* (806).

PRONOUN

1033. (2325.) **ego** and **nōs,** of direct discourse, are represented by **sē** in indirect discourse, and **meus** and **noster** by **suus. tū** and **vōs,** of direct discourse, are represented in indirect discourse by **ille,** or, when less emphatic, by **is.**

trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, *that he had crossed the Rhine not of his own accord,* was the assertion of Ariovistus. **quī nisi dēcēdat, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō sed hoste habitūrum. quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē prīncipibus populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum,** *that unless he withdrew, he should consider him not a friend but a foe. Why, if he killed him, he should do a favor to numerous leading men in the Roman nation.* Here Ariovistus is reported as speaking to Caesar.

CONDITIONAL PERIODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

(A.) PROTASIS

1034. (2326.) The protasis of every kind (931, 932) has the verb in the subjunctive in indirect discourse (1026).

1035. (2327.) The tense of the protasis is generally imperfect or pluperfect (1031): as,

Ariovistus respondit: sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō impedīrī, *Ariovistus answered: if he did not dictate to the Roman nation, no more ought the Roman nation to interfere with him.* **quae sī fēcisset, Pompēium in Hispāniās itūrum,** *if he did that, Pompey would go to the Spains.*

1036. (2328.) But indeterminate protases (931) are sometimes put in the present or perfect subjunctive in indirect discourse, even with a main secondary tense: as,

Ariovistus respondit: sī iterum experīrī velint, sē parātum esse dēcertāre, *Ariovistus answered that if the Romans wanted to try again, he was ready to fight it out.*

1037. (2329.) Protases of action non-occurrent (932) remain in the imperfect or pluperfect, even with a main primary tense.

quaeret ab accūsātōribus quid factūrī essent, sī in eō locō fuissent, *he will ask the accusers what they would have done if they had been in that predicament.*

(B.) Apodosis

1038. (2330.) In indeterminate conditional periods (931), the apodosis simply follows the general rule (1023, 1030) : as,

Iovem sīc āiunt philosophī, sī Graecē loquātur, loquī, *the philosophers say that this is Jove's style of speaking, if Jove speaks Greek* (933). **sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum,** *if he persisted in following them up with war, let him call to mind the old time valor of the Helvetians* (933). **futūrum esse, nisi prōvīsum esset, ut Rōma caperētur,** *that unless precaution was taken, Rome would be captured* (984, 933).

1039. (2331.) In conditional periods of action non-occurrent (932), the future participle with **fuisse** is used in apodoses of the active voice : as,

an Cn. Pompēium cēnsēs māximārum rērum glōriā laetātūrum fuisse, sī scīret sē in sōlitūdine Aegyptiōrum trucīdātum īrī, *do you suppose that Pompey would have taken any pleasure in the fame which his peerless exploits brought him if he had known that he was going to be butchered in the wilds of Egypt?*

In one instance, found in Caesar, the future participle with **esse** occurs, representing the imperfect subjunctive of present time (938) : **Caesarem arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliam ; neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiundī Tasgetiī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, ad castra ventūrōs esse,** *that he thought Caesar was gone into Italy ; otherwise, the Carnutes would not have formed their design of killing Tasgetius, and the Eburones, if he were at hand, would not be assaulting the camp.* Here the context shows that **ventūrōs esse** represents the imperfect subjunctive of the direct discourse. But ordinarily it might seem to represent the future indicative. Hence, to avoid ambiguity, the Romans generally did not try to express present time in apodoses of this class in indirect discourse.

1040. (2334.) **futūrum fuisse ut** with the imperfect subjunctive is used in apodoses of the passive voice : as,

Theophrastus accūsāsse nātūram dīcitur quod hominibus tam exiguam vītam dedisset : quōrum sī aetās potuisset esse longinquior, futūrum fuisse ut omnī doctrīnā hominum vīta ērudīrētur, *it is said that Theophrastus took nature to task "for giving man such a short life ; if*

*the period could have been longer, man's life would have been informed
with knowledge of every sort."*

Pronouns

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

1041. (2335.) For the use of the nominatives **ego tū, nōs
vōs,** see 456. The genitive plurals **nostrum** and **vestrum** are
used as partitive, **nostrī** and **vestrī** as objective genitives: as,

nēmō nostrum, *not one of us* (560). **memoria nostrī tua,** *your remembrance of me* (571).

THE REFLEXIVE sē AND suus

1042. (2336.) The reflexive regularly refers to the
subject of the verb : as,

fugae sēsē mandābant, *they betook themselves to flight.* **Caesar cōpiās
suās dīvīsit,** *Caesar divided his forces.* For **sē ipse,** see 1061 ; for **sē** or
suus quisque, 1069.

1043. (2337.) The reflexive **suus** sometimes refers to a word not the
subject, when that word is specially emphasized or easily made out
from the context : as,

Alexandrum uxor sua occīdit, *Alexander was murdered by his own
wife.* **dēsinant īnsidiārī domī suae cōnsulī,** *let them cease to waylay the
consul in his own house and home.*

1044. (2338.) In the construction of the accusative with
the infinitive, the reflexive is regularly used when the subject
of the infinitive refers to the subject of the verb : as,

Vārus imperium sē habēre dīxit, *Varus said that he had authority.*
id sēsē effectūrōs spērābant, *they hoped to accomplish it.*

1045. (2340.) When the subject of the infinitive is different from
that of the verb, the reflexive sometimes refers to the subject of the
verb, sometimes to that of the infinitive : as,

**Ariovistus respondit omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppūgnandum vē-
nisse,** *Ariovistus answered that all the states of Gaul had come to attack
him,* i. e. Ariovistus. **nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse,**

that no man had contended with him without his own undoing; **sēcum** refers to Ariovistus, the subject of the main verb **respondit, suā** to **nēminem.**

1046. (2341.) In subordinate subjunctive clauses of purpose, indirect discourse, or indirect question, the reflexive refers to the subject of the main sentence, and is called the *Indirect Reflexive:* as,

huic mandat, ut ad sē quam prīmum revertātur, *he instructs him to come back to himself as soon as possible.* **excruciābit mē erus, quia sibī nōn dīxerim,** *my master'll torture me "because I have not told him."*

.

EQUIVALENTS FOR A RECIPROCAL PRONOUN

1047. (2344.) The place of a reciprocal pronoun, *each other,* is supplied by **inter nōs, inter vōs, inter sē,** or by **alter** or **alius** followed by another case of the same word: as,

inter nōs nātūrā cōniūnctī sumus, *we are united with each other by nature.* **Cicerōnēs puerī amant inter sē,** *the Cicero boys are fond of each other.* **cum alius aliī subsidium ferret,** *when they were helping each other.*

THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN

1048. (2346.) The possessive of the personal and reflexive pronoun is regularly omitted, unless it is required for emphasis or contrast.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN
hīc

1049. (2247.) **hīc** points out what is near the speaker in place, time, or thought: as,

nōn mē exīstimāvī in hōc sermōne ūsque ad hanc aetātem esse ventūrum, *I did not think that in this discourse I should get down to the present generation.* **reliquum omne tempus hūius annī,** *all the rest of this year.*

1050. (2351.) When **hīc** relates to the words of a sentence, it points out what has preceded or is to follow, or emphasizes a word referred to by a preceding relative.

haec habuī dē senectūte quae dīcerem, *this was what I had to say on Old Age.* **fēcit pācem hīs condiciōnibus,** *he made peace on the following terms.*

1051. (2352.) **hīc** and **ille** are often opposed, particularly in contrasts of classes: as, **laudātur ab hīs, culpātur ab illīs,** *one side praises him, the other condemns.*

1052. (2354.) When **hīc** and **ille** refer to two different persons or things named in the sentence, **hīc** commonly refers to the nearer word, **ille** to the remoter word: as,

Caesar beneficiīs ac mūnificentiā māgnus habēbātur, integritāte vītae Catō. Ille mānsuētūdine et misericordiā clārus factus, huic sevēritās dīgnitātem addiderat, *Caesar was esteemed great for his liberality and generosity, Cato for his unsullied life. The former became famous through his humanity and mercy, the latter's dignity was heightened by his austerity.*

iste

1053. (2356.) **iste** points out something near to, belonging to, or imputed to the person addressed: as,

cum istā sīs auctōritāte, nōn dēbēs adripere maledictum ex triviō, *carrying the influence that you do, you ought not to take to street-corner abuse.* **tū istīs faucibus, istīs lateribus, istā gladiātōriā tōtīus corporis firmitāte,** *you with that gullet of yours, those swollen flanks, that prize-fighter's bulky make-up.*

ille

1054. (2358.) **ille** points to what is remote in place, time, or thought: as,

populus Rōmānus nihil aequē atque illam veterem iūdiciōrum vim gravitātemque requīrit, *the Roman people miss nothing so much as the ancient vigor and firmness attaching to public trials.* **hīs autem dē rēbus sōl mē ille admonuit ut brevior essem,** *but on these topics yonder sun has warned me to be pretty brief.*

1055. (2359.) **ille** is often used to point out a celebrity, or to refer to what is famed in story.

hīc est ille Dēmosthenēs, *this is the famous Demosthenes.* **Mēdēa illa,** *Medea famed in story.*

The Determinative Pronoun

is

1056. (2365.) **is** refers to something named in the context: as,

petit ā rēge et eum plūribus verbīs rogat ut id ad sē mittat, *he solicits the king and begs him at considerable length to send it to him.*

1057. (2367.) With a connective, **is** denotes an important addition: as, **vincula et ea sempiterna,** *imprisonment and that too perpetual.*

1058. (2368.) **is** indicates something explained or restricted by a relative or indefinite, **quī, quīcumque, sī quis:** as,

ūnus ex eō numerō quī ad caedem parātī erant, *one of the number that were ready to do murder.* **neque is sum quī mortis perīculō terrear,** *but I am not the man to be scared by danger of death, no, not I.*

The Pronoun of Identity

īdem

1059. (2371.) **īdem,** *the same,* may often be variously rendered by *likewise, also, all the same, at once.*

ūtēbātur eō cibō quī et suāvissimus esset et īdem facillimus ad concoquendum, *he made use of such food as was both very dainty and likewise very easy to digest.* **ita fīet ut nōn omnēs quī Atticē, eīdem bene dīcant,** *so it will be found that not all who speak Attic are also good speakers.*

The Intensive Pronoun

ipse

1060. (2374 f.) **ipse,** *self,* is used in contrasts.   Thus, it may contrast the chief person with subordinates, or a person with anything belonging to him: as,

Catilīna ipse pertimuit, profūgit; hī quid exspectant? *Catiline, their head, has fled in abject terror; his minions here, what wait they for?* **ēī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit,** *he put Labienus, his lieutenant, in charge*

of the fortification he had made; he hurried, himself, to Italy with forced marches.

1061. (2376.) **ipse** is often used with personals and reflexives agreeing with the emphatic word. But the nominative is usually preferred.

neque enim potest exercitum is continēre imperātor, quī sē ipsum nōn continet, *for no commander can keep his army under control who does not keep his own self under control.* **Iūnius necem sibī ipse cōnscīvit,** *Junius killed himself.*

1062. (2378.) **ipse** is used in many combinations where *self* is an inadequate translation. It may sometimes be translated by *mere, of one's self, voluntarily,* or, with numerals and dates, *exactly, just,* or, of place, *right :* as,

nōn sōlum adventus malī, sed etiam metus ipse adfert calamitātem, *not only the coming of misfortune, but even the mere dread of it brings disaster.* **Catilīnam vel ēiēcimus vel ēmīsimus vel ipsum ēgredientem verbīs prōsecūtī sumus,** *we have driven Catiline out, or let him out, or, when he was going out of his own motion, wished him godspeed.* **Kalendīs ipsīs Novembribus,** *on the 1st of November precisely.* **in ipsō vadō dēprehēnsus Indutiomarus interficitur,** *right at the ford Indutiomarus is caught and killed.*

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

uter and quis

1063. (2385.) **uter,** *whether? which?* is used in questions about two things; **quis** and **quī,** *who? what?* in questions about more than two, though sometimes loosely of two things.

uter est īnsānior hōrum ? *which of these is the greater crank?* **ut quem velīs, nesciās,** *so that you don't know which to choose.*

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN

quis or quī

1064. (2388.) **quis** or **quī,** *a, some, somebody,* always stands after one or more words of the sentence. **quis** or **quī** is used after **sī (nisi, sīve), nē, num, utrum, an, quō,** or **quandō,** in preference to **aliquis,** unless emphasis is intended.

P   225

dīxerit quis, *somebody may say.*   hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant, *if there was ever any sharpish work, these men would rally ; if a man fell from his horse, they would close round him.*

aliquis

1065. (2390.) **aliquis** or **aliquī,** *some one, some one or other*, has always some affirmative emphasis, and is opposed to the idea of *all, much, none*: as,

nōn sine aliquā spē, *not without some hope.*   quaerō sitne aliqua āctiō an nūlla, *I ask whether there is some ground for an action or none.*

quīdam

1066. (2392.) **quīdam,** *a, a certain*, denotes a person or thing that we cannot describe or do not care to.

nōn inrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit, *one of the privates of the Tenth said a very dry thing.*   vidēmus nātūram suō quōdam itinere ad ūltimum pervenīre, *nature reaches perfection by a kind of road of her own.*

quisque

1067. (2394.) **quisque,** *each, each in particular, each by himself*, applies what is stated of all to each several case, out of a number more than two.

quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat, *as the cohorts successively charged, a great number of the enemy fell every time.*

1068. (2395.) **quisque** is sometimes used in a relative and demonstrative sentence both : as, **quod cuique obtigit, id quisque teneat,** *let every man keep what he has got.*

1069. (2397.) **quisque** is often used with **sē** or **suus**, superlatives, and ordinals, holding an unemphatic place *after* these words: as,

ipse sē quisque dīligit, *a man always loves his own self.*   optimum quidque rārissimum est, *ever the fairest is the rarest.*   quīntō quōque annō Sicilia tōta cēnsētur, *at the end of every four years all Sicily is assessed.*

uterque

1070. (2399.) **uterque**, *each*, is used of two individuals, and **utrīque** of two sets or parties.

nūtū tremefactus uterque est polus, *at his nod trembled each pole.* **Aetōliōrum utraeque manūs Hēraclēam sēsē inclūsērunt,** *both bands of the Aetolians shut themselves up in Heraclea.*

quisquam and ūllus

1071. (2400.) **quisquam,** *a single one, any one at all,* and **ūllus,** *a bit of a, any at all, any,* are used chiefly in negative, interrogative, conditional, and comparative sentences, or with **sine.**

interdīcit omnibus, nē quemquam interficiant, *he warns them collectively against killing any man at all.* **sī quisquam est timidus, is ego sum,** *if anybody is timid, I am the man,* **quī saepius cum hoste cōnflīxit quam quisquam cum inimīcō concertāvit,** *who has measured swords oftener with the enemy than anybody ever wrangled with an opponent in private life.* **sine ūllō metū in ipsum portum penetrāre coepērunt,** *without a bit of fear they began to make their way right into the harbor.*

1072. (2403.) **nēmō** is generally used for **nōn quisquam, nēmō umquam** for **numquam quisquam,** nihil for **nōn quicquam,** and **nūllus** for **nōn ūllus.** If only two are spoken of, **neuter** is used.

———————

Numerals

1073. (2404.) Numerals are divided into Adjectives: *Cardinal,* **ūnus,** *one,* **duo,** *two,* etc.; *Ordinal,* **prīmus,** *first,* **secundus,** *second,* etc.; *Distributive,* **singulī,** *one each,* **bīnī,** *two each,* etc.; and Numeral Adverbs: **semel,** *once,* **bis,** *twice,* etc.

For the inflection of numerals, see 262–268.

ARABIC	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1	ūnus, *one* (263)	prīmus, *first* (268)
2	duo, *two* (264)	secundus, *second*
3	trēs, *three* (264)	tertius, *third*
4	quattuor, *four*	quārtus, *fourth*
5	quīnque, *five*	quīntus, *fifth*
6	sex, *six*	sextus, *sixth*
7	septem, *seven*	septimus, *seventh*
8	octō, *eight*	octāvus, *eighth*
9	novem, *nine*	nōnus, *ninth*
10	decem, *ten*	decimus, *tenth*
11	ūndecim, *eleven*	ūndecimus, *eleventh*
12	duodecim	duodecimus
13	tredecim	tertius decimus
14	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17	septendecim	septimus decimus
18	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
19	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20	vīgintī, *twenty*	vīcēsimus, *twentieth*
21	vīgintī ūnus or ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsimus prīmus or ūnus et vīcēsimus
22	vīgintī duo or duo et	vīcēsimus alter or alter et vīcē-
28	duodētrīgintā [vīgintī	duodētrīcēsimus [simus
29	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus
30	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
99	ūndēcentum	ūndēcentēsimus
100	centum, *one hundred*	centēsimus, *one hundredth*
101	centum ūnus or centum	centēsimus prīmus or centēsimus
200	ducentī·(266) [et ūnus	ducentēsimus [et prīmus
300	trecentī	trecentēsimus
400	quadringentī	quādringentēsimus
500	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
600	sēscentī	sēscentēsimus
700	septingentī	septingentēsimus
800	octingentī	octingentēsimus
900	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
1,000	mīlle, *thousand* (267)	mīllēsimus, *thousandth*
2,000	duo mīllia	bis mīllēsimus
5,000	quīnque mīllia	quīnquiēns mīllēsimus
10,000	decem mīllia	deciēns mīllēsimus
50,000	quīnquāgintā mīllia	quīnquāgiēns mīllēsimus
100,000	centum mīllia	centiēns mīllēsimus
1,000,000	deciēns centēna mīllia	deciēns centiēns mīllēsimus

DISTRIBUTIVES	NUMERAL ADVERBS	ROMAN
singulī, *one each* (268)	semel, *once*	I
bīnī, *two each*	bis, *twice*	II
ternī, *three each*	ter, *thrice*	III
quaternī, *four each*	quater, *four times*	IIII or IV
quīnī, *five each*	quīnquiēns, *five times*	V
sēnī, *six each*	sexiēns, *six times*	VI
septēnī, *seven each*	septiēns, *seven times*	VII
octōnī, *eight each*	octiēns, *eight times*	VIII
novēnī, *nine each*	noviēns, *nine times*	VIIII or IX
dēnī, *ten each*	deciēns, *ten times*	X
ūndēnī, *eleven each*	ūndeciēns, *eleven times*	XI
duodēnī	duodeciēns	XII
ternī dēnī	terdeciēns	XIII
quaternī dēnī	quater deciēns	XIIII or XIV
quīnī dēnī	quīndeciēns	XV
sēnī dēnī	sēdeciēns	XVI
septēnī dēnī	septiēns deciēns	XVII
duodēvīcēnī	octiēns deciēns	XVIII
ūndēvīcēnī	noviēns deciēns	XVIIII or XIX
vīcēnī, *twenty each*	vīciēns, *twenty times*	XX
vīcēnī singulī or singulī et vīcēnī	vīciēns semel or semel et vīciēns	XXI
vīcēnī bīnī or bīnī et vī-	vīciēns bis or bis et vīciēns	XXII
duodētrīcēnī [cēnī	duodētrīciēns	XXVIII
ūndētrīcēnī	*ūndētrīciēns	XXVIIII or XXIX
trīcēnī	trīciēns	XXX
quadrāgēnī	quadrāgiēns	XXXX or XⱢ
quīnquāgēnī	quīnquāgiēns	Ⱶ
sexāgēnī	sexāgiēns	ⱵX
septuāgēnī	septuāgiēns	ⱵXX
octōgēnī	octōgiēns	ⱵXXX
nōnāgēnī	nōnāgiēns	ⱵXXXX or XC
ūndēcentēnī	*ūndēcentiēns	ⱵXXXXVIIII or
centēnī, *a hundred each*	centiēns, *a hundred times*	C [XCIX
centēnī singulī	centiēns semel or centiēns	CI
ducēnī	ducentiēns [et semel	CC
trecēnī	trecentiēns	CCC
quadringēnī	quadringentiēns	CCCC
quīngēnī	quīngentiēns	D
sēscēnī	sēscentiēns	DC
septingēnī	septingentiēns	DCC
octingēnī	octingentiēns	DCCC
nōngēnī	nōngentiēns	DCCCC
singula mīllia, *a thousand*	mīlliēns, *a thousand times*	∞
bīna mīllia [*each*	bis mīlliēns	∞∞
quīna mīllia	quīnquiēns mīlliēns	↻
dēna mīllia	deciēns mīlliēns	⊕
quīnquāgēna mīllia	quīnquāgiēns mīlliēns	↻
centēna mīllia	centiēns mīlliēns	⊛
deciēns centēna mīllia	deciēns centiēns mīlliēns	⌈x⌉

NOTATION

1075. (2406.) Numbers are noted by combinations of the characters I = 1; V = 5; X = 10; ⌊, ⌉, or L = 50; C = 100; D = 500; ∞, post-Augustan M = 1000.

1076. (2408.) To denote 10,000 the sign for 1000 was doubled: thus, ⊕. Another circle was added to denote 100,000; thus, ⊛. The halves of these signs were used for 5000 and 50,000: thus, Ɗ and ⅅ.

SOME FORMS OF NUMERALS

1077. (2413.) In the ordinals from *twentieth* upwards, the older forms vīcēnsimus, trīcēnsimus, etc., etc., are not infrequently found instead of vīcēsimus, trīcēsimus, etc., etc.

1078. (2414.) In the numeral adverbs from **quīnquiēns** upwards, later forms in -**iēs** are often found: as, **quīnquiēs, deciēs**, etc., etc.

1079. (2415.) In cardinals and ordinals from *thirteen* to *seventeen* inclusive, the larger number sometimes comes first, and in cardinals **et** is sometimes used: as, **decem trēs,** *thirteen.* **fundōs decem et trēs relīquit,** *he left thirteen farms.*

DISTRIBUTIVES

1080. (2420.) Distributives are used to denote an equal division among several persons or things, and in expressions of multiplication: as,

bīnī senātōrēs singulīs cohortibus praepositī, *two senators were put over every cohort.* **bis bīna,** *twice two.*

1081. (2421.) Distributives are also used with substantives which have no singular, or which have a different meaning in the singular; but in this use *one* is always **ūnī**, not **singulī**, and *three* **trīnī**, not **ternī**: as,

ut ūna castra iam facta ex bīnīs vidērentur, *so that one camp seemed now to have been formed out of two.* **trīnīs catēnīs vinctus,** *in triple irons.*

FRACTIONS

1082. (2424.) *One half* may be expressed by **dīmidium** or **dīmidia pars;** other fractions with 1 as a numerator by ordinals, with or without **pars:** as, **tertia pars** or **tertia,** $\frac{1}{3}$.

1083. (2425.) If the numerator is greater than 1 it is usually expressed by the cardinal feminine, with the ordinal feminine for the denominator: as, **duae septimae,** $\frac{2}{7}$.

Prosody
RULES OF QUANTITY

1084. (2429.) For the general principles of length of vowels and syllables, see 43–47. Some exceptions to these principles may be mentioned here.

1085. (158.) A diphthong is regularly long (28). But in compounds, **ae** of **prae** is shortened before a vowel or **h** (43): as, **praĕacūtus, praĕhibeō.**

1086. (159.) In some instances a vowel before another vowel is long (43): thus,

1087. (160.) Old genitives in -**āī** (137) have **ā**: as, **aulāī. diēī,** genitive or dative, has **ē.**

1088. (162.) Genitives in -**īus** have **ī**: as, **nullīus**; but these sometimes shorten **ī** in verse.

1089. (163.) Long **ī** is found in **fīō** throughout, except in **fit** and usually before **er**: as, **fierem, fierī.** Also in **dius,** *godly.*

1090. (164.) In many Greek words a long vowel comes before another vowel: as, **āēr, Aenēas.**

MONOSYLLABLES

1091. (2430.) Monosyllables ending in a vowel or a single consonant have the vowel long: as,

dōs, sōl, ā, pēs.

Exceptions

1092. (2431 f.) The vowel is short in monosyllables ending in **b, d, m,** and **t**: as, **ab, ad, dum, dat**; in the enclitics -**que, -ne, -ve, -ce**; and in the words **cor, mel, os,** *bone,* **ac, vir, is, quis, fac, fer, per, ter, an, bis, in, cis, nec, vel, es.**

POLYSYLLABLES
PENULTS

1093. (2434.) Disyllabic perfects and perfect participles have the vowel of the penult long when it stands before a single consonant: as,

vēnī, vīdī, vīcī, fōtus.

231

Exceptions

1094. (2435.) Nine perfects have the penult short.
bibī, -fidī   dedī, scidī   stetī, stitī   tulī, -tudī, per-culī.

1095. (2436.) Ten perfect participles have the penult short :
citus, datus   itum, ratus   -rutus, satus   situs, status   litus, quitus.

FINAL SYLLABLES

ENDING IN A VOWEL

1096. (2437.) In words of more than one syllable, final **a** and **e** are short; final **o, u,** and **i,** are long.

Exceptions

1097. (2438.) Final **a** is long in the ablative, in indeclinable words, and in the imperative : as, **mensā, quadrāgintā** (but **ita** and **quia** have short **a**), **amā.**

1098. (2440.) Final **e** is long in cases of nouns with stems in -**ē**- (230), in adverbs from stems in -**o**-, and in the imperative singular active of verbs in -**ēre** : as, **diē, altē, docē.**   So **ferē, fermē,** but **bene, male.**

1099. (2442.) Final **o** is short in the nominatives **ego, duo,** and sometimes in the nominative of stems in -**n**- (170) : as, **mentio, virgo.**   **o** is regularly short in the ablatives **cito** and **modo,** used as adverbs.

1100. (2445.) Final **i** is short in **nisi, quasi,** and common in **mihī, tibī, sibī; ibī, ubī.**

ENDING IN A SINGLE CONSONANT NOT **s**

1101. (2447.) A final syllable ending in a single consonant not **s** has its vowel short.

Exceptions

1102. (2448.) The last vowel is long in compounds of **pār;** in the contracted genitive plural of stems in -**u**- : as **currūm;** in all cases of **illic** and **istic** except the nominative masculine ; in the adverbs **illūc** and **istūc.**

ENDING IN **s**

1103. (2451.) Final syllables in **is** and **us** have the

vowel short; those in as, es, and os, have the vowel long.

Exceptions

1104. (2452 f.) Final **is** has **ī** in all plural cases: as, **omnīs; viīs, vōbīs.** Also in the nominatives singular **Quirīs** and **Samnīs,** in the second person singular of verbs in **-īre,** in **māvīs,** in compounds of **sīs,** and in all present subjunctives singular: as, **velīs, mālīs, nōlīs.**

1105. (2454.) **u** is long in the nominative singular of consonant stems with **ū** before the final stem consonant: as, **tellūs,** stem **tellūr-; palūs,** stem **palūd-;** in the genitive singular and nominative and accusative plural of nouns with stems in **-u-:** as, **frūctūs.**

1106. (2456.) Final **es** has short **e** in the nominative singular of stems in **-d-** and **-t-** which have the genitive in **-idis, -itis,** and **-etis** (164. 165): as, **praeses, teges, comes** (but **ē** in **abiēs, ariēs,** and **pariēs**); also in **penes,** and in compounds of **es,** *thou art.*

1107. (2457.) Final **os** has short **o** in the nominative of stems in **-o-:** as, **servos;** also in **compos, impos.**

POSITION

1108. (2458.) For the general rule of position, see 46; but, except in the thesis of a foot, a final syllable ending with a short vowel generally remains short before a word beginning with two consonants or a double consonant: as, **molliă strāta, nemorōsă Zacȳnthos.**

FIGURES OF PROSODY

1109. (2482 ff.) **Elision.** In verse, a final vowel, a diphthong, or final **m** with a preceding short vowel had only a faint sound before a vowel or **h** at the beginning of the next word: as,

quidve moror, s(ī) omnīs ūn(ō) ōrdin(e) habētis Achīvōs.
mōnstr(um) horrend(um) īnform(e) ingēns, cui lūmen adēmptum.

In reading verse, we generally drop such endings altogether.

1110. Hiatus. The omission of elision is called hiatus: as,
Nēreidum mātrī et Neptūnō Aegaeō.

233

1111. (2499.) **Synizesis** (Greek συνίζησις, *a settling together*). Two vowels (or a vowel and a diphthong) which belong to different syllables sometimes coalesce so as to form one syllable. This is called *Synizesis*. Examples are: mĕŏ, ĕadem, cŭius, aureī.

1112. (2503.) HARDENING. A vocalic i or u is sometimes made consonantal before another vowel: as, abĭete, arĭete.

1113. (2504.) SOFTENING. Conversely,. a consonantal i or u sometimes becomes vocalized before a vowel, thus giving an additional syllable: as, silŭae for silvae.

1114. (2505.) DIASTOLÉ (Greek διαστολή, *a drawing asunder*). A syllable which in verse is generally short is sometimes used as long for metrical convenience. The syllable so employed generally falls under the verse-ictus, and in most cases is immediately followed by the principal caesura, or by a pause in the sense.   Examples are:

> terga fatīgāmūs hastā, nec tarda senectus.
> tum sīc Mercurium adloquitūr ac tālia mandat.

In nearly all cases this lengthening is not arbitrary, but the "lengthened" syllable is one that was originally long.

1115. (2507.) SYSTOLÉ (Greek συστολή, *a drawing together*). Conversely a syllable which in verse is regularly long is sometimes shortened for metrical convenience: as, dederunt. In most cases this shortening is not arbitrary, but represents a pronunciation which was in actual use, especially among the common people.

1116. (2508.) SYNCOPÉ (Greek συγκοπή, *a cutting short*). A short vowel is often dropped between two consonants: as, surpite for surripite, repostum for repositum.

1117. (2509.) TMESIS (Greek τμῆσις, *a cutting*) is the separation of the parts of a word: as, septem subiecta triōnī = septemtriōnī subiecta.

VERSIFICATION

1118. (2511.) RHYTHM (Gr. ῥυθμός, from ῥεῖν, *to flow*) is the effect of regularity produced by the discrimination of a movement or sound into uniform intervals of time.   It is often marked by a stress or *ictus* recurring at fixed intervals.

Rhythm is by no means confined to verse. Music, dancing, and even the regular beat of a trip-hammer, have rhythm.

1119. (2512.) METRE (Gr. μέτρον, *a measure*) is the definite measurement of verse by feet, lines, strophes, systems, etc.

1120. (2513.) Latin verse is quantitative, the rhythm depending upon the quantity of the syllables. The ictus naturally falls upon a long syllable (or its equivalent). English verse, on the other hand, is accentual, its rhythm depending upon the accent of words.

1121. (2515.) The UNIT OF MEASURE is the duration of a short syllable and is called a *Time* or *Mora*. The *mora* did not have an absolute length, but varied with the nature of the rhythm. For greater convenience, however, it is assumed that its length was uniform, and equalled that of an eighth note ♪ A long syllable, being equal to two shorts, has a length of two *morae*, which is assumed to be the same as that of our quarter-note ♩ Hence in notation ᴗ = ♪ and — = ♩

1122. (2519.) FEET. Latin verse (like English) is measured by groups of syllables called *Feet*. Each of these groups has a definite length of so many *morae* (1121): as,

FEET OF FOUR MORAE			
Name	Sign	Musically	Example
Dactyl	— ᴗ ᴗ	♩ ♪ ♪	dūcimus
Spondee	— —	♩ ♩	fēcī

1123. (2520.) ARSIS and THESIS. Every complete foot consists of two parts, an accented and an unaccented. The part on which the rhythmical accent or *ictus* falls is called the *Thesis* (Gr. θέσις, *a setting down*). The unaccented part of the foot is termed the *Arsis* (Gr. ἄρσις, *a raising*).

· The name *Thesis* originally referred to the setting down of the foot

235

in beating time or marching, or to the movement of the leader's hand in making the downward beat; and *Arsis* in like manner meant the raising of the foot or hand.

1124. (2532.) A *Rhythmical Series* or *Colon* is a group of two or more feet (but not more than six) which are united into a rhythmic whole by strengthening one of the ictuses, so that it becomes the principal or dominant ictus of the whole group.

1125. (2533.) THE VERSE. A rhythmical series, or group of two (or even three) series, which forms a distinct and separate whole is called a *Verse*. The final syllable of a verse terminates a word, and may be either long or short (whence it is termed *syllaba anceps*) without regard to the rhythm. Hiatus (1110) is freely allowed at the end of a verse (though in rare cases elision occurs before a vowel at the beginning of the following verse; see 1137).

1126. (2536.) NAMES OF VERSES. Verses are called *trochaic, iambic, dactylic*, etc., according to their fundamental (or characteristic) feet. A verse which contains one foot is called a *monometer*, one of two a *dimeter*, one of three a *trimeter*, one of four a *tetrameter*, one of five a *pentameter*, and one of six a *hexameter*.

1127. (2542.) CAESURA AND DIAERESIS. A *Caesūra* (literally *a cutting*, from *caedo, I cut*) is the break in a verse produced by the ending of a word within a foot. When the end of a word coincides with the end of a foot, the break is called a *Diaeresis* (Gr. διαίρεσις, *a separating*). A caesura is marked ‖, a diaeresis ⚌.

The word *caesura* is often loosely used to include both caesura proper and diaeresis.

1128. (2543.) Strictly speaking, there is a caesura (or diaeresis, as the case may be) wherever a word ends within a verse; but the main incision in the verse is so much more important than the rest that it is often called the *principal caesura*, or simply *the caesura*.

1129. (2544.) Caesuras are named according to their position in the verse; thus a caesura after the third half-foot (i. e. in the second foot) is called *trithemimeral* (from Gr. τριθημιμερής, *containing three halves*), one after the fifth half-foot (i. e. in the third foot) *penthemimeral* (Gr. πενθημιμερής, *consisting of five halves*), one after the seventh half-foot (i. e. in the fourth foot) *hephthemimeral* (Gr. ἐφθημιμερής), etc.

DACTYLIC RHYTHMS

1130. (2555.) In dactylic rhythms the fundamental foot is the dactyl (‒ ⌣ ⌣), for which its metrical equivalent, the spondee (‒ ‒), is frequently substituted.

THE DACTYLIC HEXAMETER

1131. (2556.) The DACTYLIC HEXAMETER is the verse regularly employed in epic, didactic, and bucolic poetry, and is used by the Latin writers oftener than any other measure. It consists of six feet, the last of which is a spondee (but with the privilege of *syllaba anceps;* see 1125). The fifth foot is usually a dactyl; but sometimes a spondee is employed, in which case the verse is called *spondaic.* In each of the other four feet either a dactyl or a spondee may be used. The scheme is therefore:

$$\underline{\prime} \; \underset{\smile\smile}{} \mid \underline{\prime} \; \underset{\smile\smile}{} \mid \underline{\prime} \; \underset{\smile\smile}{} \mid \underline{\prime} \; \underset{\smile\smile}{} \mid \underline{\prime} \; \underset{[\smile\smile]}{} \mid \underline{\prime} \; \_$$

1132. (2557.) A caesura which comes immediately after the thesis of a foot is called *masculine;* one which falls in the middle of the arsis (i. e. after the first short of a dactyl) is termed *feminine.*

1133. (2558.) The principal caesura in the Latin hexameter is most frequently the penthemimeral (1129): as in:

Arma virumque canō **|** Trōiae quī prīmus ab ōrīs.

Next in order of frequency stands the hephthemimeral, which is usually accompanied by a secondary trithemimeral, and in many cases also by a feminine caesura in the third foot: as in the verse,

Īnsīgnem **|** pietāte **|** virum **|** tot adīre labōrēs.

Sometimes, though more rarely, the principal break in the line is the feminine caesura in the third foot, as in the verse,

Spargēns ūmida mella **|** sopōriferumque papāver.

1134. (2559.) The diaeresis (see 1127) after the fourth foot (often called "bucolic diaeresis" from its use by pastoral writers) sometimes occurs, but is much less common in Latin hexameters than in Greek. An example is

Dīc mihi, Dāmoetā, **|** cūium pecus? ‖ An Meliboeī?

237

1135. (2561.) The great flexibility of the hexameter makes it an admirable vehicle of poetic expression. Accumulated spondees give the verse a slow and ponderous movement ; as in the line

> Ill(ī) in|ter sē|sē | mā|gnā vī | bracchia | tollunt.

The multiplication of dactyls imparts to the verse a comparatively rapid and impetuous motion, as in the famous verse

> Quadrupe|dante pu|trem | soni|tū quatit | ungula | campum.

But even when dactyls are numerous, the Latin hexameter, "the stateliest measure ever moulded by the lips of man," should not be read with the jerky ⅜ movement which is characteristic of the English hexameter.

1136. (2562.) The following passage may serve to illustrate the movement of the hexameter, and to show how the use of the different caesuras imparts variety to the measure :

> Ō soci|ī | —nequ(e) e|n(im) ignā|rī | sumus | ante ma|lōrum—
> ō pas|sī gravi|ōra, | da|bit deus | hīs quoque | fīnem.
> Vōs et | Scyllae|am | rabi|em | peni|tusque so|nantēs
> accē|stis scopu|lōs, | vōs | et Cȳ|clōpea | saxa
> exper|tī ; | revo|cāt(e) ani|mōs, | mae|stumque ti|mōrem
> mittite : | fōrsan et | haec | ō|lim | memi|nisse iu|vābit.

Compare in English :

Rolls and rages amain the restless, billowy ocean,
While with a roar that soundeth afar the white-maned breakers
Leap up against the cliffs, like foemen madly rejoicing.

1137. (2568.) A verse which is connected with the following one by elision is called hypermetrical. Such verses are rare, and usually end with the enclitics **-que** or **-ve.**

Order of Words

1138. The order of words in Latin admits of greater variety than in English because Latin is the more richly inflected language. Two general types of order may be recognized, the Grammatical and the Rhetorical. In the former, the words in a sentence and the sentences in a period proceed according to their grammatical relations. In the latter, they are arranged with a view to emphasis, greater clearness, or euphony.

GRAMMATICAL ORDER

1139. When no part of a sentence needs special emphasis, the subject usually comes first, the predicate last, and the other words of the sentence between the subject and predicate : as,

Īphicratēs, Athēniēnsis, nōn tam māgnitūdine rērum gestārum quam disciplīnā mīlitārī nōbilitātus est, *Iphicrates of Athens was famous not so much for the greatness of his achievements as for his knowledge of the art of war.*

1140. Attributes (462), unless emphatic, follow their substantives : as, coniurātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, *he formed a conspiracy among the nobility.* tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsiliī māgnī et virtūtis, *tribune of the soldiers, a man of great judgment and valor.* prōvinciam nostram, *our province.* vir sine metū, *a man without fear.* Catilīna ipse, *Catiline himself.* Theomnāstus quīdam, *a person named Theomnastus.*

1141. But demonstrative, determinative, relative, and interrogative pronouns precede their substantives : as,

cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus, *with these five legions.* ob eās causās ēī mūnītiōnī Labiēnum praefēcit, *for these reasons he put Labienus in command of that fortification.* quā spē adductī, *impelled by the hope of this.* quis senātor ? *what senator ?*

1142. Appositives follow the word they explain : as, Cornēlia, māter Gracchōrum, *Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi.*

1143. The object precedes the verb, and the indirect object precedes the direct object : as,

duās fossās perdūxit, *he made two trenches.* decima legiō ēī grātiās ēgit, *the tenth legion gave him thanks.*

1144. No general rule can be given for the position of adjectives. They both precede and follow their substantives. The common adjectives like **bonus, malus,** etc., and adjectives of quantity, as **omnēs** and **cēterī,** also cardinals, usually precede ; but ordinals usually follow. In some phrases, the position of the adjective is fixed by custom : as, **populus Rōmānus, rēs pūblica, Sacra via, pōntifex māximus.**

1145. Adverbs precede the words which they qualify : as,

Ubiī māgnopere ōrābant, *the Ubians earnestly entreated.* ēgregiē fortis, *exceptionally brave.*

239

RHETORICAL ORDER

1146. Any deviation from the grammatical order (1139) results in rhetorical order. This is to emphasize some word or phrase, to indicate the connection of sentences, or for euphony.

DEVIATION FOR EMPHASIS

1147. INVERSION. The most prominent places in the sentence are the first and the last when occupied by other words than the subject and the verb respectively (1139): as,

flēbunt Germānicum etiam īgnōtī: vindicābitis vōs, *even* STRANGERS *will* weep *for Germanicus:* YOU *will* avenge *him.* lūce sunt clāriōra tua cōnsilia, *your plans are as clear as* daylight. But forms of sum, meaning *there is, there are,* regularly stand first, with no emphasis: as, erant omnīnō itinera duo, *there were in all two roads.*

1148. ANAPHORA. This is the repetition of a word in the same position, or the recurrence of series of words in the same order: as,

tē ut ūlla rēs frangat? tū ut umquam tē corrigās? tū ut ūllam fugam meditēre? *anything break* you *down?* you *ever reform?* you *ever think of running away?*

1149. SEPARATION or HYPERBATON. When two words that would naturally stand together are both to be made emphatic, this may be effected by separating them: as,

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, *Gaul, including everything under the name, is divided into three parts.* angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrantur, *they considered their confines too narrow.*

1150. CHIASM. To secure a double contrast the contrasted words may be arranged in the following order, which is called *Chiasm* or *Chiastic order,* from the name of the Greek letter X, *chi:*

$$\begin{matrix} a & b \\ & X & \\ b & a \end{matrix}$$

fragile corpus animus sempiternus movet, *our frail body is swayed by a soul imperishable.* The chiastic arrangement is often applied to clauses: as, ratiō nostra cōnsentit, pūgnat ōrātiō, *our views agree, the conflict is in our expression.*

DEVIATION FOR CLEARNESS

1151. The grammatical order (1139) is often abandoned in the interest of greater clearness. For example, words referring back to a preceding sentence are often put early in their own sentence. Hence many connecting phrases are found at the beginnings of sentences.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, *of all the above-named, the Belgians are the bravest.* **ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet,** *a bridge leads from that town over to the Helvetians.* Examples of connecting phrases are: **quā dē causā, quā in rē, quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, quam ob rem,** etc.

DEVIATION FOR EUPHONY

1152. The principles which govern euphony can only be learned from much reading of Latin and observation of Roman taste. In general, successions of many short words, of many long words, and of many words with like endings were avoided. So also a dactyl and spondee at the end of a sentence: as, **esse vidētur.**

POSITION OF SOME SPECIFIC WORDS

1153. ipse commonly follows another pronoun denoting the same person or thing: as, **mē ipse cōnsōlor,** *I console myself.* So **hōc ipsum, tua ipsīus, sua ipsōrum,** etc.

1154. Demonstrative pronouns are frequently placed between a substantive and its attributes: as, **antīquō illō more,** *that good old custom.*

1155. omnēs commonly follows **aliī, cēterī, reliquī,** and demonstrative pronouns: as, **alia omnia, cēterī omnēs, hī omnēs.**

1156. quisque regularly follows **sē** or **suvs,** superlatives or ordinals: see 1069.

1157. Interrogatives regularly stand first (1141), but may be preceded by an emphatic word or phrase: as, **deus fallī quī potuit ?** *how can a god be deceived?*

1158. For the position of prepositions, see 668.

1159. enim, autem, vērō, and usually **igitur,** follow one or sometimes more words. In old Latin, however, **enim,** *verily,* often comes first. **etiam** generally precedes, **quoque** and **quidem** always follow the emphatic word; in negations **nē** precedes and **quidem** follows the emphatic word.

1160. Negatives regularly stand immediately before the word to which they belong. In the periphrastic forms of the verb **nōn** generally precedes the form of **sum**: as, **passus nōn est,** *he did not allow.* When nōn refers to the whole clause, it often stands first with emphasis: as, **nōn mihī uxor aut fīlius cāriōrēs rēpūblicā sunt,** *wife or son is not dearer to me than the republic.*

ARRANGEMENT OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

1161. The parts of a complex sentence are generally arranged on the plan of the simple sentence : main subject first, main verb last, subordinate clauses between : as,

Aeduī, cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, *the Aeduans, finding that they could not defend themselves, send envoys to Caesar.* **Flaccus, quid aliī posteā factūrī essent, scīre non poterat,** *Flaccus could not tell what other people would do in the future.*

1162. The regular arrangement admits of numerous variations, which must be learned from works on style, or still better by attentive reading of the authors. The following general points may be noticed :

1163. Temporal, conditional, and concessive clauses regularly precede the main clause : as,

eō cum veniō, praetor quiēscēbat, *when I got there, the praetor was taking a nap.* **sī vīs, potes,** *you can, if you will.*

1164. Clauses of purpose and result and indirect questions regularly follow the main clause, but sometimes precede for emphasis.

Ariovistus tantōs sibī spīritūs sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur, *Ariovistus had put on such high and mighty airs that he seemed intolerable.* **quaesīvī cōgnōsceretne sīgnum,** *I asked if he recognized the seal.* **Caesar nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, ad exercitum proficīscitur,** *to avoid facing war on a more formidable scale, Caesar goes to the army.*

THE PERIOD

1165. A period is a complex sentence (468), made up of a main and one or more subordinate sentences, the words being so arranged that the thought is kept uncompleted until the close : as,

Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, *the Helvetians, astounded at his sudden arrival and observing that he had done in one day what they had accomplished with extreme difficulty in twenty—the passage of the river—send envoys to him.*

The Calendar

MONTHS

1166. The Latin names of months are adjectives, used only in connection with **mēnsis**, *month*, expressed or understood, or with the words **Kalendae, Nōnae,** and **Īdūs** (1167). They are as follows: **Iānuārius, Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis, Māius, Iūnius, Iūlius, Augustus, September, Octōber, November, December.** The English names of months are taken from these adjectives.

The month of *July* was first called **Iūlius**, after Julius Caesar, in 44 B.C., and *August* was called **Augustus**, after the Emperor, in 8 B.C. Previously, these months were called **Quīnctīlis**, *fifth*, and **Sextīlis**, *sixth*, since the year originally began with March; compare *September*, *October*, etc.

1167. The Roman month was originally lunar. Hence its days are reckoned from three points: **Kalendae**, the day of the new moon; **Nōnae**, the day of the moon's first quarter; **Īdūs** (plural), the day of the full moon.

1168. Julius Caesar, in 46 B.C., reformed the calendar, giving each month the number of days which it has at present. Previously, March, May, Quinctilis (July), and October had 31 days, February 28, the others 29.

1169. The **Kalendae**, *Calends*, are always the first of every month. The **Nōnae**, *Nones*, and **Īdūs**, *Ides*, may be easily remembered by means of the following old verses.

> "In March, July, October, May,
>   The Ides are on the fifteenth day,
>   The Nones the seventh; but all besides
>   Have two days less for Nones and Ides."

Thus, **Īdibus Iūniīs,** *June thirteenth.* **Nōnīs Decembribus,** *December fifth.* **ante Kalendās Iūniās,** *before the first of June.* Often abbreviated: as, **K. Oct.,** *October first.*

1170. The day before the Calends, Nones, or Ides, is expressed by **prīdiē** with the accusative (661): as, **prīdiē Nōnās Māiās,** *the day before the Nones of May,* i. e. *May sixth.* **prīdiē Kalendās Septembris,** *August* 31.

1171. The other days are reckoned backward from the Calends, Nones, or Ides, including the day of departure in the count. Thus, the second day before the Calends was reckoned by the Romans as the *third*, the third as the *fourth*, and so on. The phrase most commonly employed is **ante diem tertium (quārtum, quīntum,** etc.) prefixed to the accusative: as,

Ante diem tertium Nōnās Māiās, *May* 5. But **ante diem** is regularly abbreviated and numeral signs are used to represent the ordinal: as, **a. d. v Īdūs Quīnctīlīs,** *July* 11. **a. d. IIII Kal. Nov.,** *October* 29.

1172. Shorter phrases also occur: as, VII **Īdūs Nov.** (i. e. **Septimo Īdūs Novembris**), *November* 7. **Nātus est Augustus** VIIII **Kal. Octob.,** *Augustus was born on the twenty-third of September.*

1173. The whole phrase **ante diem,** etc. (1171), is sometimes treated as a single substantive and governed by a preposition: as, **dīxī caedem tē optimātium contulisse in ante diem v Kalendās Novembris,** *I said that you had fixed upon the twenty-eighth of October for the massacre of the nobility.*

Abbreviations of Proper Names

1175.

A. = Aulus	L. = Lūcius	Q. = Quīntus
App. = Appius	M. = Mārcus	S. or Sex. = Sextus
C. = Gāius	M'. = Mānius	Ser. = Servius
Cn. = Gnaeus	Mam. = Māmercus	Sp. = Spurius
D. = Decimus	N. or Num. = Numerius	T. = Titus
K. = Kaeso	P. = Pūblius	Ti. or Tib. = Tiberius

1174. JULIAN CALENDAR

Days of the Month	March, May, July, October. 31 days	January, August, December. 31 days	April, June, September, November. 30 days	February. 28 days
1	Kalendīs	Kalendīs	Kalendīs	Kalendīs
2	VI ⎫	IV ⎱ ante	IV ⎱ ante	IV ⎱ ante
3	V ⎪ ante	III ⎰ Nōnās	III ⎰ Nōnās	III ⎰ Nōnās
4	IV ⎬ Nōnās	Prīdiē Nōnās	Prīdiē Nōnās	Prīdiē Nōnās
5	III ⎭	Nōnīs	Nōnīs	Nōnīs
6	Prīdiē Nōnās	VIII ⎫	VIII ⎫	VIII ⎫
7	Nōnīs	VII ⎪	VII ⎪	VII ⎪
8	VIII ⎫	VI ⎬ ante	VI ⎬ ante	VI ⎬ ante
9	VII ⎪	V ⎪ Īdūs	V ⎪ Īdūs	V ⎪ Īdūs
10	VI ⎬ ante	IV ⎪	IV ⎪	IV ⎪
11	V ⎪ Īdūs	III ⎭	III ⎭	III ⎭
12	IV ⎪	Prīdiē Īdūs	Prīdiē Īdūs	Prīdiē Īdūs
13	III ⎭	Īdibus	Īdibus	Īdibus
14	Prīdiē Īdūs	XIX ⎫	XVIII ⎫	XVI ⎫
15	Īdibus	XVIII ⎪	XVII ⎪	XV ⎪
16	XVII ⎫	XVII ⎪	XVI ⎪	XIV ⎪
17	XVI ⎪	XVI ⎪	XV ⎪	XIII ⎪
18	XV ⎪	XV ⎪	XIV ⎪	XII ⎪
19	XIV ⎪	XIV ⎪	XIII ⎪	XI ⎪
20	XIII ⎪	XIII ⎪	XII ⎪	X ⎪
21	XII ⎪ ante Kalendās (of the next month)	XII ⎪ ante Kalendās (of the next month)	XI ⎪ ante Kalendās (of the next month)	IX ⎪ ante Kalendās Mārtiās
22	XI ⎬	XI ⎬	X ⎪	VIII ⎪
23	X ⎪	X ⎪	IX ⎪	VII ⎪
24	IX ⎪	IX ⎪	VIII ⎪	VI ⎪
25	VIII ⎪	VIII ⎪	VII ⎪	V ⎪
26	VII ⎪	VII ⎪	VI ⎪	IV ⎪
27	VI ⎪	VI ⎪	V ⎪	III ⎭
28	V ⎪	V ⎪	IV ⎭	Prīdiē Kalendās
29	IV ⎪	IV ⎪	III ⎭	[Mārtiās
30	III ⎭	III ⎭	Prīdiē Kalendās	
31	Prīdiē Kalendās (of the next month)	Prīdiē Kalendās (of the next month)	(of the next month)	

245

INDEX OF IMPORTANT VERBS

The references are to *sections*. For the principal parts of most compounds, see the sections.in which the simple verbs are treated.

ab-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctus, 408.
ab-oleō, ēre, -olēvī, -olitus, 433.
ac-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, 406.
ac cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitus, 416.
acuo, ere, acuī, acūtus, 410.
ad ipīscor, ī, -eptus, 417.
ad-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -ultus, 415.
ā-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, 414.
agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, 408.
āiō, 345.
algeō, ēre, alsī, 430.
alō, ere, aluī, altus, 416
am-iciō, īre, -icuī, -ictus, 447.
am plector, ī, -plexus, 418.
ap-eriō, īre, -eruī, -ertus, 447.
apīscor, ī, aptus, 417.
arceō, ēre, arcuī, 436.
ar-cēsso, ere, -cēssīvī, -cēssītus, 415.
ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, 430.
arēsco, ere, -āruī, 416.
arguō, ere, arguī, argūtus, 410.
audeō, ēre, ausus, 354.
audiō, īre, audīvī, audītus, 351, 446.
augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, 429.

bibō, ere, bibī (pōtus), 404.

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus, 406.
caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus, 406.
caleō, ēre, caluī, 436.
calēscō, ere, -caluī, 416.
canō, ere, cecinī (cantātus), 405.
capēssō, ere, capēssīvī, 415.
capiō, ere, cēpī, captus, 343, 408.
careō, ēre, caruī, 436.
carpō, ere, carpsī, carptus, 412.

caveō, ēre, cāvī, cautus, 427.
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, 413.
-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, 411.
cēnseō, ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, 435.
cernō, ere, crēvī, certus and -crētus, 414.
cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus, 432.
cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctus, 412.
claudō, ere, clausī, clausus, 413.
coepī, 358.
cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, 414.
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, 408.
colō, ere, coluī, cultus, 416.
com-miniscor, ī, -mentus, 417.
cōmō, ere, cōmpsī, cōmptus, 412.
com-periō, īre, -perī, -pertus, 440.
cōn-fringō, ere, -frēgī, -frāctus, 408.
con-gruō, ere, -gruī, 410.
cōn-sulō, ere, -suluī, -sultus, 416.
con-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tāctus, 405.
coquō, ere, cōxī, coctus, 412.
crēbrēscō, ere, -crēbruī, 416.
crepō, āre, crepuī, 424.
crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētus, 414.
cubō, āre, cubuī, 424.
cūdō, ere, -cūdī, -cūsus, 409.
cupiō, ere, cupīvī, cupītus, 415.
currō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, 406.

dē-leō, ēre, -lēvī, -lētus, 431.
dēmō, ere, dēmpsī, dēmptus, 412.
dē-pecīscor, ī, -pectus, 417.
de-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, 411.
dē-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, 434.
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, 412.
dī-ligo, ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, 412.
discō, ere, didicī, 405.

dī vidō, ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, 413.
dō, dare, dedī, datus, 330.
doceō, ēre, docuī, doctus, 434.
doleō, ēre, doluī, 436.
domō, āre, domuī, domitus, 424.
dūco, ere, dūxī, ductus, 412.
dūrēscō, ere, dūruī, 416.

edō, 335.
ef-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectus, 408.
egeō, ēre, eguī, 436.
ē-icio, ere, -iēcī, -iectus, 408.
ē-liciō, ere, -licuī, -licitus, 416.
ē-mineō, ēre, -minuī, 436.
emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, 408.
eō, īre, iī, itum, 332.
ē-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptus, 416.
ex-perior, īrī, -pertus, 448.

faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, 408.
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus, 406.
farciō, īre, farsī, fartus, 442.
fateor, ērī, fassus, 439.
faveō, ēre, fāvī, 427.
-fendō, ere, (fendī, -fēnsus, 411.
ferō, ferre -tulī, lātus), 340.
fervēscō, ere, -ferbuī and -fervī, 416.
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus, 354.
fīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus, 413.
findō, ere, fidī, fissus, 407.
fingō, ere, finxī, fictus, 412.
fīō, fierī, factus sum, 346.
flectō, ere, flexī, flexus, 413.
fleō, ēre, flēvī, flētus, 431.
-flīgō, ere, -flīxī, -flīctus, 412.
flōreō, ēre, flōruī, 436.
flōrēscō, ere, -floruī, 416.
fluō, ere, flūxī, fluxus (adj.), 413.
fodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus, 409.
foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus, 427.
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus, 408.
fremō, ere, fremuī, 416.
fricō, āre, fricuī, frictus, 424.
fruor, ī, frūctus, 417.
fugiō, ere, fūgī, 408.
fulciō, īre, fulsī, fultus, 442.
fulgeo, ēre, fulsī, 430.
fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus, 409.
fungor, ī, fūnctus, 417.

gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus, 354.
gemō, ere, gemuī, 416.

gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, 412.
gīgnō, ere, genuī, genitus, 416.
gradior, ī, gressus, 418.

habeō, ēre, habuī, habitus, 434.
haereō, ēre, haesī, 430.
hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus, 442.
horreō, ēre, horruī, 436.
horrēscō, ere, -horruī, 416.
hortor, ārī, hortātus, 425.

iaceō, ēre, iacuī, 436.
iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus, 408.
—, —, īcī, ictus, 408.
ī-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum, 414.
im-buō, ere, -buī, -būtus, 410.
in-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, 408.
in-cutiō, ere, -cussī, -cussus, 413.
in-dulgeō, ēre, -dulsī, 429.
ind-uō, ere, -uī, ūtus, 410.
in-liciō, ere, -lēxī, -lectus, 412.
inquam, 331.
intel-legō, ere, -lēxī, lēctus, 412.
iubeō, ēre, iūssī, iūssus, 430.
iungo, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, 412.
iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, 422.

lābor, ī, lapsus, 418.
lacēssō, ere, lacēssīvī, lacēssītus, 415.
laedo, ere, laesī, laesus, 413.
largior, īrī, largītus, 449.
lateō, ēre, latuī, 436.
laudō, āre, āvī, ātus, 347.
lavō, āre, lāvī, lautus, 422.
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, 408.
libet, libēre, libitum est or libuit, 360.
liceor, ērī, licitus, 438.
licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est, 360.
linō, ere, lēvī, litus, 414.
linquō, ere, līquī, -līctus, 408.
loquor, ī, locūtus, 417.
lūceō, ēre, lūxī, 429.
lūdō, ere, lūsī, lūsus, 413.
luō, ere, luī, -lūtus, 410.

mālō, mālle, māluī, 339.
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, 430.
mātūrēscō, ere, mātūruī, 416.
meminī, 358.
mentior, īrī, mentītus, 449.
mereō, ēre, meruī, meritus, 434.
mergo, ere, mersī, mersus, 413.

mētior, īrī, mēnsus, 450.
metuō, ere, metuī, 410.
micō, āre, micuī, 424.
mīror, ārī, ātus, 353.
misceō, ēre, miscuī, mixtus and mistus, 434.
misereor, ērī, miseritus, 438.
miseret, miserēre, miseritum est, 359.
mittō, ere, mīsī, missus, 413.
molō, ere, moluī, molitus, 416.
moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus, 349, 434.
mordeō, ēre, mormordī, morsus, 426.
morior, ī, mortuus, 417.
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, 427.
mulceō, ēre, mulsī, mulsus (adj.), 430.

nancīscor, ī, nactus and nanctus, 417.
nāscor, ī, nātus, 417.
nectō, ere, nexī and nexuī, nexus, 413.
neg-legō, ere, -lēxī, lēctus, 412.
nequeō, 334.
niteō, ēre, nituī, 436.
nītor, ī, nīsus and nīxus, 418.
noceō, ēre, nocuī, 436.
nōlō, nōlle, noluī, 338.
nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus (adj.), 414.
nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūpta, 412.
-nuō, ere, -nuī, 410.

ob-līvīscor, ī, -lītus, 417.
ob-mūtēscō, ere, -mūtuī, 416.
obs-olēsco, ere, -olēvī, -olētus (adj.), 415.
oc-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cāsus, 406.
ōdī, 358.
oleō, ēre, oluī, 436.
op-eriō, īre, -eruī, ertus, 447.
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, 360.
op-perior, īrī, -pertus, 448.
ordior, īrī, orsus, 450.
orior, īrī, ortus, 417.

pacīscor, ī, pactus, 417.
paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, 359.
palleō, ēre, palluī, 436.
pandō, ere, pandī, pāssus and pānsus, 411.
parcō, ere, pepercī, 406.
pāreō, ēre, pāruī, 436.
pariō, ere, peperī, partus, 405.
partior, īrī, partītus, 353.
pāscō, ere, pāvī, pāstus, 414.
pateō, ēre, patuī, 436.

patior, ī, passus, 418.
pavēscō, ere, ex-pāvī, 408.
pel-liciō, ere, -lēxī, -lectus, 412.
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, 406.
pendeō, ēre, pependī, 426.
pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsus, 406.
per-cellō, ere, -culī, -culsus, 407.
petō, ere, petīvī and petiī, petītus, 415.
piget, pigēre, piguit or pigitum est, 359.
pingō, ere, pinxī, pīctus, 412.
placeō, ēre, placuī, placitus, 434.
plango, ere, planxī, planctus, 412.
plaudō, ere, plausī, plausus, 413.
-pleō, ere, -plēvī, -plētus, 431.
-plicō, āre, -plicuī, -plicitus, 424.
pluit, 359.
pōnō, ere, po-suī, po-situs, 416.
poscō, ere, poposcī, 405.
possum, posse, potuī, 328.
potior, īrī, potītus, 417.
pre-hendō, ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, 411.
premō, ere, pressī, pressus, 413.
prēndō, ere, prēndī, prēnsus, 411.
pro-ficīscor, ī, -fectus, 417.
pro-hibeō, ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, 434.
prōmō, ere, prōmpsī, prōmptus, 412.
pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est, 359.
pungō, ere, pupugī, punctus, 405.

quaero, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, 415.
quatiō, ere, -cussī, quassus, 413.
queō, 334.
queror, ī, questus, 353, 417.
quiēscō, ere, quiēvī, quiētus (adj.), 415.

rādō, ere, rāsī, rasus, 413.
rapiō, ere, rapuī, raptus, 416.
rēfert, rēferre, rētulit, 360.
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, 341, 412.
reor, rērī, ratus, 437.
re-periō, īre, re-pperī, re-pertus, 440.
rēpō, ere, rēpsī, 412.
rīdeō, ēre, rīsī, -rīsus, 430.
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, 408.
ruō, ere, ruī, -rutus, 410.

saepiō, īre, saepsī, saeptus, 442.
saliō, īre, saluī, 447.
sapiō, ere, sapīvī, 415.
sarciō, īre, sarsī, sartus, 442.
scandō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, 411.

scindō, ere, -scĭdī, scissus, 407.
sciō, īre, scīvī, scītus, 444.
scīscō, ere, scīvī, scītus, 414.
scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, 412.
· sculpō, ere, sculpsī, sculptus, 412.
secō, āre, secuī, sectus, 424.
sedeō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, 428.
senēscō, ere, -senuī, 416.
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, 443.
sepeliō, īre, sepelīvī, sepultus, 445.
sequor, ī, secūtus, 417.
serō, ere, -seruī, sertus, 416.
serō, serere, sēvī, satus, 404.
sīdō, ere, sīdī (-sīdī, -sēdī), -sessus, 409.
sileō, ēre, siluī, 436.
sinō, ere, sīvī and -siī, situs, 414.
sistō, ere, -stitī, status, 404.
soleō, ēre, solitus, 354.
so-lvō, ere, so-lvī, so-lūtus, 410.
sonō, āre, sonuī, 424.
sortior, īrī, sortītus, 449.
spargō, ere, sparsī, sparsus, 413.
spernō, ere, sprēvī, sprētus, 414.
-spiciō, ere, -spēxī, -spectus, 412.
spondeō, ēre, spopondī, spōnsus, 426.
spuō, ere, -spuī, 410.
statuō, ere, statuī, statūtus, 410.
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus, 414.
stinguō, ere, -stinxī, -stinctus, 412.
stō, stāre, stetī, 421.
strepō, ere, strepuī, 416.
strīdeō, ēre, strīdī, 428.
stringō, ere, strinxī, strictus, 412.
struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, 412.
studeō, ēre, studuī, 436.
stupeō, ēre, stupuī, 436.
suādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus, 430.
suēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus, 415.
sum, esse, fuī, 326.
sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, 412.
suō, ere, -suī, sūtus, 410.

taceō, ēre, tacuī, tacitus (adj.), 434.
taedet, taedēre, taesum est, 359.
tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus, 405.
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus, 412.
temnō, ere (contempsī, contemptus), 412.
tendō, ere, tetendī, tentus, 405.

teneō, ēre, tenuī, -tentus, 434.
tepēscō, ere, -tepuī, 416.
tergeō, ēre, tersī, tersus, 430.
terō, ere, trīvī, trītus, 414.
terreō, ēre, terruī, territus, 434.
texō, ere, texuī, textus, 416.
timeō, ēre, timuī, 436.
-timēscō, ere, -timuī, 416.
tingō, ere, tinxī, tinctus, 412.
tollō, ere (sustulī, sublātus), 405.
tondeō, ēre, -totondī and -tondī, tōnsus, 426.
tonō, āre, tonuī (at-tonitus), 359, 424.
torqueō, ēre, torsī, tortus, 429.
torreō, ēre, torruī, tostus, 434.
trahō, ere, trāxī, trāctus, 412.
tremō, ere, tremuī, 416.
tribuō, ere, tribuī, tribūtus, 410.
trūdō, ere, trūsī, trūsus, 413.
tueor, ērī, tuitus, 438.
tundō, ere, tūnsus, 406.

ulcīscor, ī, ūltus, 417.
unguō, ere, ūnxī, ūnctus, 412.
urgeō, ēre, ursī, 430.
ūrō, ere, ussī, ūstus, 412.
ūtor, ī, ūsus, 418.

vādō, ere, -vāsī, -vāsus, 413.
valeō, ēre, valuī, 436.
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus, 412.
vellō, ere, vellī, vulsus, 411.
veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum and -ventus, 441.
vereor, ērī, veritus, 353, 438.
verrō, ere, -verrī, versus, 411.
vertō, ere, vertī, versus, 411.
vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus, 424.
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, 428.
vigeō, ēre, viguī, 436.
vinciō, īre, vinxī, vinctus, 442
vincō, ere, vīcī, vīctus, 408.
vīsō, ere, vīsī, 409.
vīvō, ere, vīxī, 412.
volo, velle, voluī, 337.
volvō, ere, volvī, volūtus, 410.
vomō, ere, vomuī, 416.
voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtus, 427.

GENERAL INDEX

the, 946-986; tenses of, 319, 978-986 tenses in indirect discourse, 1030; accusative with the, 499, 958-971; of intimation (historical), 707-709; of purpose, 950, 951; with adjectives, 952; as object, 954-970; complementary, 954-957; as subject, 971-975; of exclamation, 976; in indirect discourse, 1023, 1024; relative sentences with, in indirect discourse, 1027.

Inflection, defined, 114; of the noun, 128-305; of the verb, 306-450.

inquam, 331.

Instrument, abl. of, 645-649.

Instrumental case, 599; use of abl. as, 634-658.

Intensive pronoun, declension of, 281; uses of, 1060-1062.

Intensive verbs, 93.

inter, in reciprocal expressions, 1047.

interest, constructions with, 579-581.

interior, 87.

Interjections, defined, 14.

Intermediate coordinate sentences, 776-782.

Interrogative pronouns, declension of, 285; uses of, 286, 1063.

Interrogative sentences, see Questions.

Interrogatives, position of, 1157.

intimus, partitive meaning of, 565.

Intransitive use of verbs, 498-502.

Inversion, 1147.

-iō, -ere, verbs in, 343.

-io-, suffix, 63, 65, 76.

ipse, declension of, 281; uses of, 1060-1062; in apposition with possessive pronoun, 555; position of, 1153.

-īre, verbs in, 91, 323; conjugation of verbs in, 351, 352.

Irregular verbs, 325.

is, declined, 278; uses of, 1056-1058.

-īs or **-ēs** in plur. of **-i-** stems, 204.

iste, declension of, 277; uses of, 1053.

itaque, 775.

iter, declension of, 176.

iubeō, with infinitive, 968-970.

iūdex, declined, 160.

Iuppiter, declension of, 176.

iūrō, with future infinitive, 986.

-ius and **-ium,** genitive of substantives in, 150; vocative, 152.

-ius in gen. sing. of adjectives, 245-247.

iuvenis, comparison of, 84.

iuventūs, declension of, 165.

-īvo-, suffix, 76.

Kalendae, 1166, 1167, 1169.

-lā-, suffix, 67.

Labials, 40, 41.

Labiodentals, 40, 41.

laetor, with ablative, 629; with **quod,** 850.

laudō, conjugated, 347, 348.

Length of syllables, 46, 47; of vowels, 43-45; see also Quantity.

-lento-, suffix, 78.

leō, declined, 168.

-li-, suffix, 76.

līber, adj., declined, 243.

Līber, 149.

līberī, 149; gen. plural, 154.

licet, with subjunctive, 782; with dependent infinitive, 693, 694.

Linguals, 40, 41.

List of important verbs, 402-450.

littera, litterae, 124.

-lo-, suffix, 64, 67.

Locative case, 125; of **-ā-** stems, 138; of **-o-** stems, 153; of consonant stems, 178; meaning of the, 598; use of the, 620-622; ablative used as, 598, 623-633.

locō, locīs, 626.

longius, for **longius quam,** 618.

longum est, 694.

lūx, declension of, 194.

lūxuriēs, declined, 238.

m, pronunciation of final, 33, 1109.

General Index

magis, comparison with, 89.

magnificus, comparison of, 84.

magnus, comparison of, 84; **magnum est,** 694.

malim, 719.

mallem, 721.

malo, conjugated, 339; with subjunctive, 780; with **ut,** 894; with infinitive, 965.

malus, comparison of, 85.

Manner, ablative of, 635–637; participle denoting, 1017.

mare, declined, 191; **mari,** 625.

Masculine, see Gender.

Masculine caesura, 1132.

Material, ablative of, 609–611.

Means, ablative of, 645–649; participle denoting, 1017; denoted by abl. of gerundive or gerund, 1002.

Measure, ablative of, 652–654.

medius, partitive meaning of, 565.

mel, declension of, 169.

melius est, 694.

memini, conjugated, 358; constructions with, 588–590.

Memory, genitive with verbs of, 588.

mensa, declined, 136.

-mento-, suffix, 64.

meritus, comparison of, 88.

-met, 270.

Metre, 1119.

metuo ut or **ne,** 897.

mi, 152.

miles, declined, 163.

militiae, 622.

mille, declension of, 267.

-min-, suffix, 63.

minor, with future infinitive, 986.

minus, for **minus quam,** 618.

miror, conjugated, 353; with **quod,** 850.

misereo and **misereor,** with genitive, 586.

miseresco, with genitive, 586.

miseret, with genitive, 585.

Mixed stems, 192–197.

modo, in provisos, 920; in conditional protases, 942.

moneo, conjugated, 349, 350.

-monio-, suffix, 65.

Monosyllables, quantity of, 1091.

Months, names of the, 1166; divisions of the, 1167–1170.

Moods, 308; use of, in simple sentences, 692–729; in subordinate sentences, 786–794.

Mora, 1121.

multus, comparison of, 85.

Mute stems, 160–167.

Mutes, 38, 41.

n *adulterinum,* 33.

nam, 775.

namque, 775.

nascor, with ablative, 609.

-ne, in questions, 698, 699, 705; in indirect questions, 811.

ne, in wishes, 710; in exhortations, 713; in prohibitions, 715; in concessions, 716; in questions, 723; with coordinated subjunctives, 779; in clauses of purpose, 891–900; with verbs of fearing, 897; with verbs of avoiding, hindering, and resisting, 898; in provisos, 920; **ne non,** 897; **ne . . . quidem,** 673, 762, 773, 1159.

nec, see **neque.**

necesse est, 694; with subjunctive, 782.

necne, in indirect questions, 813.

nefas, with supine in **-u,** 1007.

Negative adverbs, 671–675; two, 675; position of, 1160.

nemo, declension of, 170; for **non quisquam,** 1072; **nemo est qui,** 838; **nemo est quin,** 915; **nemo non,** 675; **non nemo,** 675.

-neo-, suffix, 75.

nequam, comparison of, 84.

neque, use of, 672.

258

Wishing, verbs of, with subjunctive, 780; with **ut,** 894; with infinitive, 965–967.

Words, order of, 1138–1165.

x, pronunciation of, 34.

y, 17.

Yes, in answers, 703.

Yes or No questions, 697–702 ; indirect, 811, 812.

z, 17.

266